As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠ 📖 or ⚠⚠📖 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠ or ⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate “danger” (red), “warning” (orange), or “caution” (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 110

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Owner’s Manual Application Terms and Conditions*

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner’s manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner’s manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner’s manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website (*https://www.privacynotice.honda.eu*) for further details.)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda’s legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

to deliver owner’s manual updates to you;

to allow us to improve and optimize the owner’s manual application and services;

to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner’s manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other user of the owner’s manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

System Updates Terms and Conditions*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application.
See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other user of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 41

For Safe Driving P. 42 Seat Belts P. 47 Airbags P. 58

Instrument Panel P. 113

Indicators P. 114 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 150

Controls P. 193

Clock P. 194 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 195
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 224
Climate Control System P. 278

Features P. 285

Audio System P. 286 Display Audio P. 288
Emergency Call (eCall) P. 394 Refuel Recommend P. 399

Driving P. 401

Before Driving P. 402 Towing a Trailer P. 406 When Driving P. 411
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 568 Refueling P. 570

Maintenance P. 575

Before Performing Maintenance P. 576 About Your Maintenance Service P. 579
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 607
Remote Transmitter Care P. 629

Handling the Unexpected P. 641

Tools P. 642 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 644 Handling of the Jack P. 667
Overheating P. 676 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 678
If You Cannot Open the Hatch P. 695

Information P. 697

Specifications P. 698 Identification Numbers P. 701

Contents

Pop-up Hood System P. 80 Child Safety P. 83 Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 109 Safety Labels P. 110

Hatch P. 207 Security System P. 210 Windows P. 217 Panoramic Roof* P. 220
Mirrors P. 247 Seats P. 250 Interior Convenience Items P. 261

Audio Error Messages P. 383 General Information on the Audio System P. 384

Honda Sensing P. 468 Braking P. 547 Parking Your Vehicle P. 557
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 573

Service Reminder System* P. 580 Maintenance Schedule* P. 587 Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 592
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 615 Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 618 12-Volt Battery P. 624
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 631 Cleaning P. 634 Accessories and Modifications P. 639

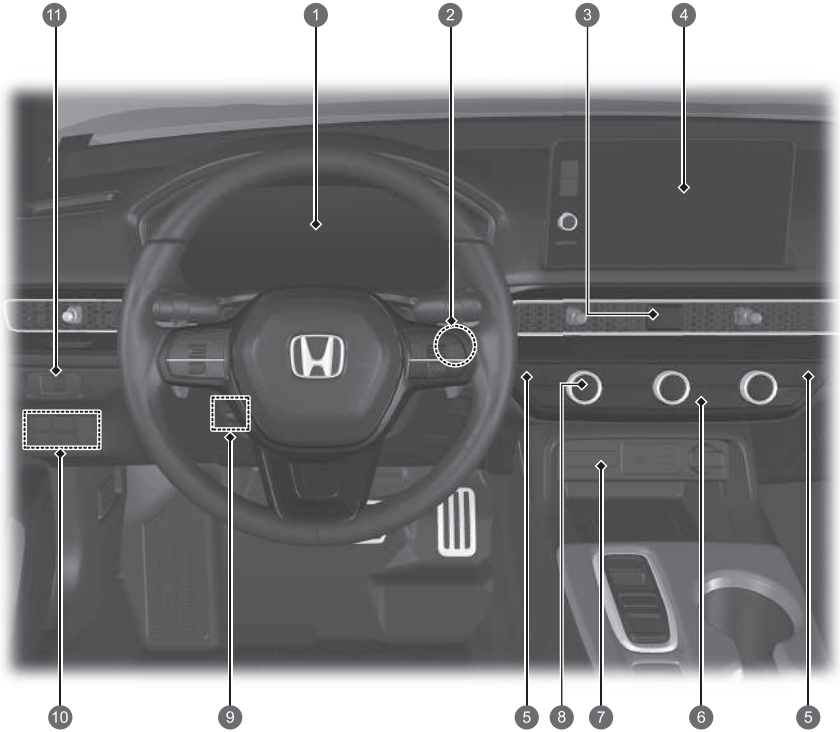
Power System Won't Start P. 668 If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 673
Fuses P. 686 Emergency Towing P. 693 If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 694

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 702 Open Source Licence P. 737

Quick Reference Guide P. 6
Safe Driving P. 41
Instrument Panel P. 113
Controls P. 193
Features P. 285
Driving P. 401
Maintenance P. 575
Handling the Unexpected P. 641
Information P. 697
Index P. 738

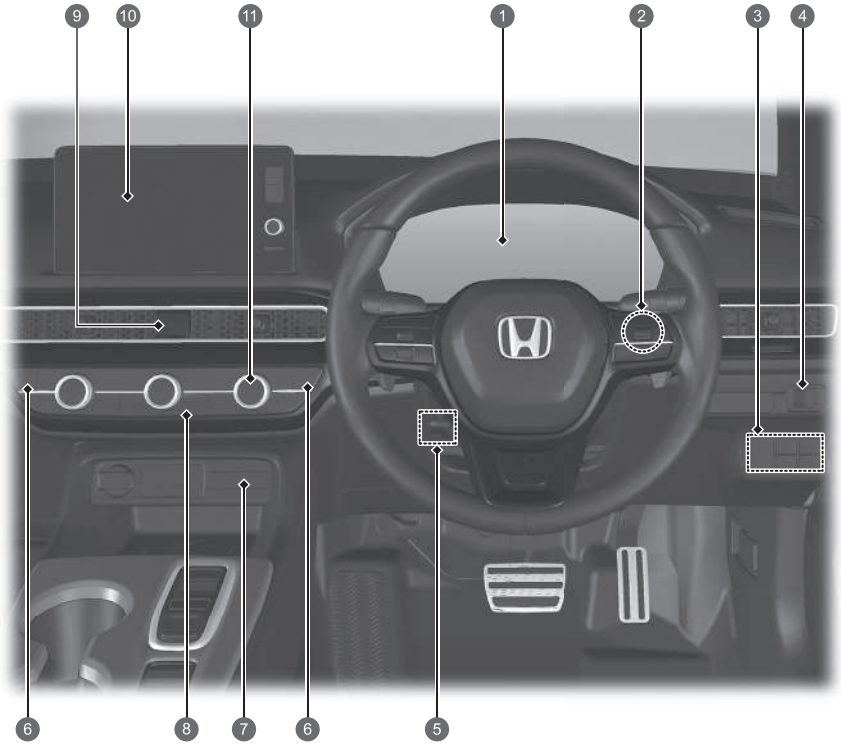
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



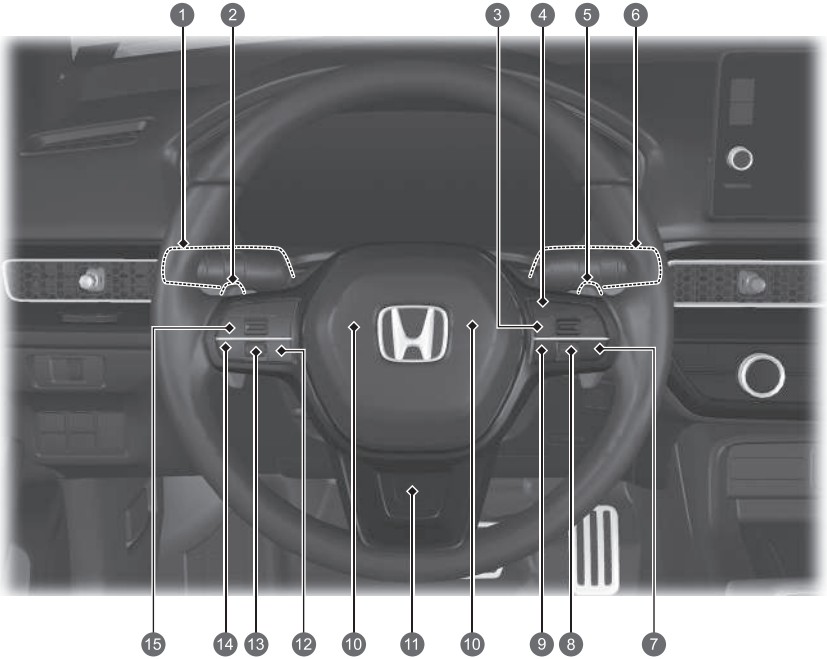
1. **System Indicators** P. 114
   Gauges P. 150
   Driver Information Interface P. 155, 172, 175
2. **POWER Button** P. 224
3. **Hazard Warning Button**
4. **Audio System** P. 286
   Navigation System
   See the Navigation System Manual
5. **Seat Heater Buttons** P. 277
6. **Rear Demister** P. 245
   Heated Door Mirror Button P. 245
7. **Passenger's Front Airbag OFF Indicator** P. 78
8. **Climate Control System** P. 278
9. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 246
10. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 455
    Parking Sensor System Button P. 560
    Safety Support Switch P. 463, 476, 531
11. **Brightness Control** P. 243, 244

Right-hand Drive Type



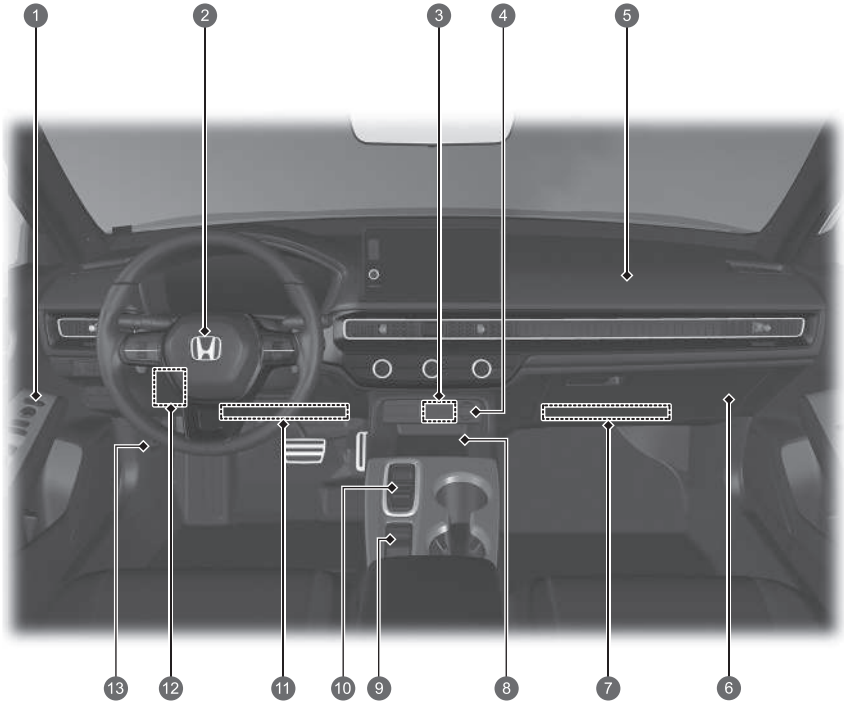
1. **System Indicators** P. 114
   Gauges P. 150
   Driver Information Interface P. 155, 172, 175
2. **POWER Button** P. 224
3. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 455
   Parking Sensor System Button P. 560
   Safety Support Switch P. 463, 476, 531
4. **Brightness Control** P. 243, 244
5. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 246
6. **Seat Heater Buttons** P. 277
7. **Passenger's Front Airbag OFF Indicator** P. 78
8. **Rear Demister** P. 245
   Heated Door Mirror Button P. 245
9. **Hazard Warning Button**
10. **Audio System** P. 286
    Navigation System
    See the Navigation System Manual
11. **Climate Control System** P. 278

Visual Index



1. **Headlights/Turn Signals** P. 226, 228
   Front Fog Lights* P. 230
   Rear Fog Light P. 230
2. **Deceleration Paddle Selector (-)** P. 425
3. **LIM Button** P. 437, 444, 486
4. **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons** P. 485
5. **Deceleration Paddle Selector (+)** P. 425
6. **Wipers/Washers** P. 240
7. **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button** P. 509
8. **Right Selector Wheel*** P. 175
9. **Interval Button** P. 500
10. **Horn (Press an area around .)**
11. **Heated Steering Wheel Button*** P. 276
12. **Voice Control Buttons*** P. 297
13. **Left Selector Wheel** P. 155
14. **(Home) Button*** P. 155
    Voice Control Buttons* P. 297
15. **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292
    Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons P. 365

Left-hand Drive Type

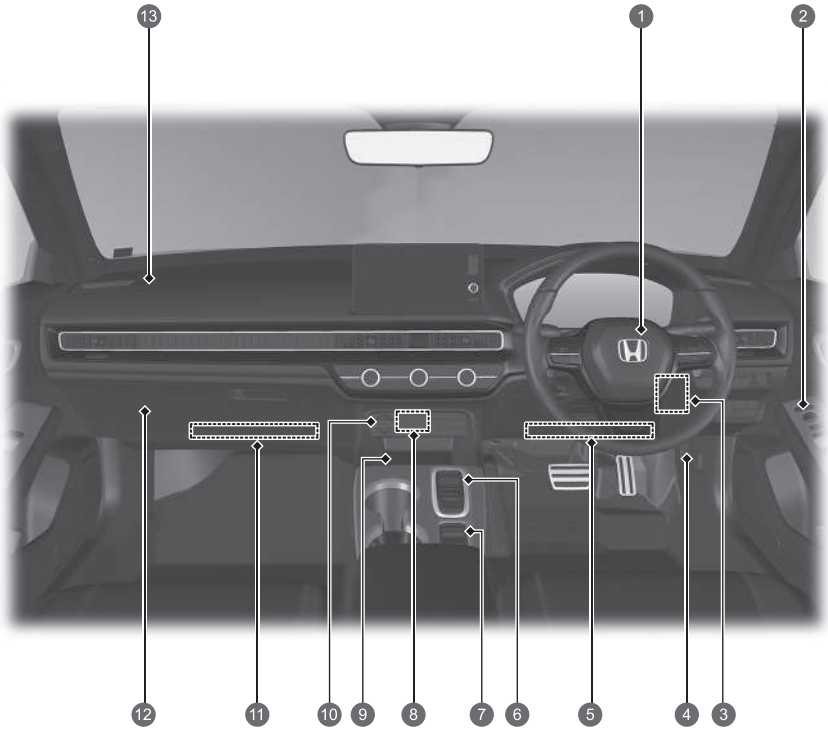


1. **Door Mirror Controls** P. 249
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 205
   Power Window Switches P. 218
2. **Driver's Front Airbag** P. 60
3. **USB Ports** P. 291
4. **Accessory Power Socket** P. 272
5. **Passenger's Front Airbag** P. 60
6. **Glove Box** P. 263
7. **Passenger's Knee Airbag** P. 66
8. **Wireless Charger*** P. 273
9. **Electric Parking Brake Switch** P. 547
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 551
   Drive Mode Switch P. 429
10. **Shift Button** P. 418
11. **Driver's Knee Airbag** P. 66
12. **Interior Fuse Box** P. 688
13. **Bonnet Release Handle** P. 593

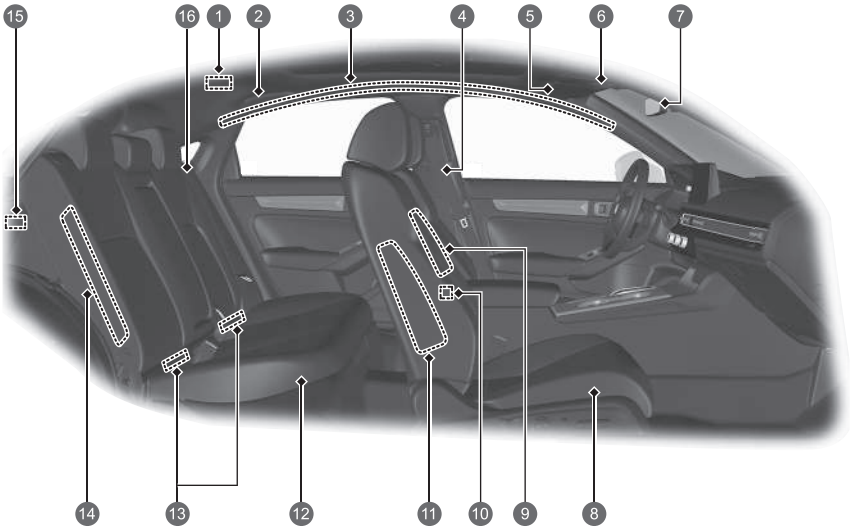
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



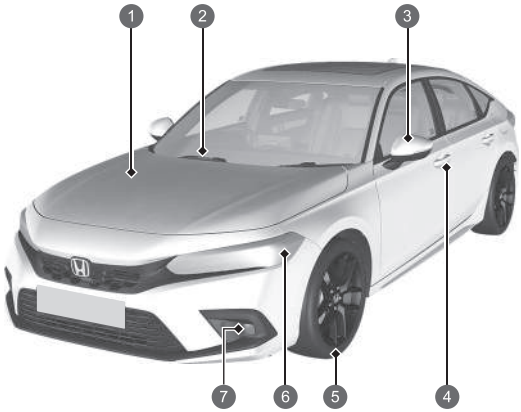
1. Driver's Front Airbag P. 60
2. Door Mirror Controls P. 249
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 205
   Power Window Switches P. 218
3. Interior Fuse Box P. 688
4. Bonnet Release Handle P. 593
5. Driver's Knee Airbag P. 66
6. Shift Button P. 418
7. Drive Mode Switch P. 429
   Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 547
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 551
8. USB Ports P. 291
9. Wireless Charger* P. 273
10. Accessory Power Socket P. 272
11. Passenger's Knee Airbag P. 66
12. Glove Box P. 263
13. Passenger's Front Airbag P. 60



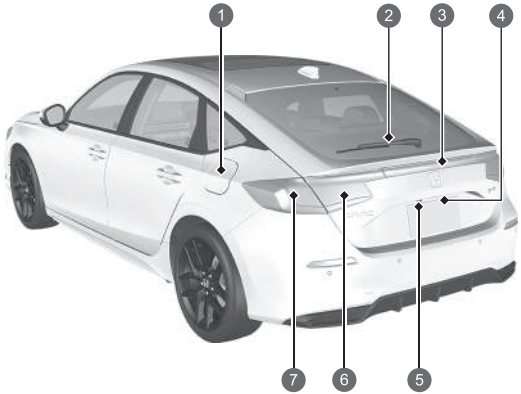
1. **Ceiling Light** P. 261
2. **Grab Handle**
   Coat Hook P. 267
3. **Side Curtain Airbags** P. 75
4. **Seat Belts** P. 47
5. **Sun Visors**
   Vanity Mirrors
   Sunglasses Holder* P. 271
6. **Map Lights** P. 262
   Panoramic Roof Switch* P. 220
   Ultrasonic/Tilt Sensor OFF Button* P. 213
7. **Rearview Mirror** P. 247
8. **Front Seat** P. 250
9. **Centre Airbag** P. 70
10. **USB Ports** P. 291
11. **Front Side Airbags** P. 72
12. **Rear Seat** P. 255
13. **Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems** P. 97
14. **Rear Side Airbags** P. 72
15. **Luggage Area Light**
    Accessory Power Socket P. 272
16. **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)** P. 102
    Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System P. 104

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 592
2. Windscreen Wipers P. 240, 615
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 249
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 228, 607
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 198
5. Tyres P. 618, 644
6. Headlights P. 226, 607
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 226, 231, 607
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 228, 607
7. Front Fog Lights P. 230, 607



1. How to Refuel P. 571
2. Rear Wiper P. 242, 617
3. High-Mount Brake Light P. 612
4. Opening/Closing the Hatch P. 207
   Hatch Release Button P. 208
   Rear Licence Plate Light P. 612
5. Multi-View Rear Camera P. 568
6. Taillights P. 611
   Back-Up Lights P. 611
   Rear Fog Light P. 230, 612
7. Brake/Taillights P. 608
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 608

e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

- **Energy efficiency**
  As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine.
  In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

- **Battery types**
  There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

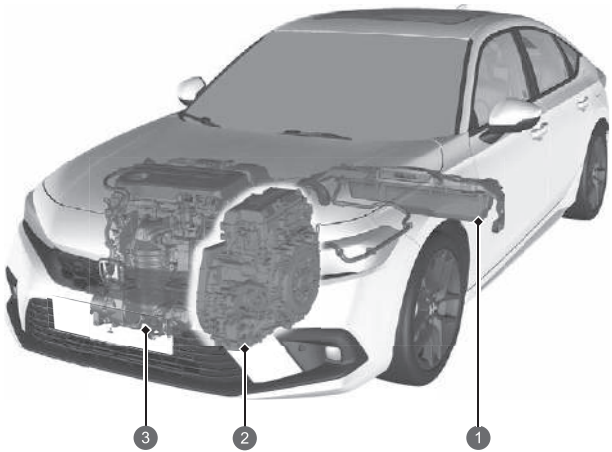
e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

Petrol Engine– Runs the generator and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

Generator– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

Electric Motor– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

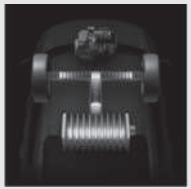
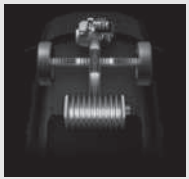
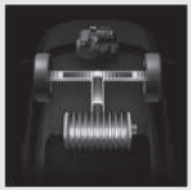
High Voltage Battery– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.
Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximise the range of your electric vehicle. P. 466



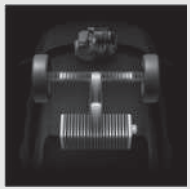
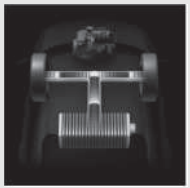
1. High Voltage Battery
2. Generator & Electric Motor
3. Petrol Engine

● **Sounds Unique to the e:HEV**
When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

Models with A-type meter

Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: • Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): • The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. • The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: • The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. • The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

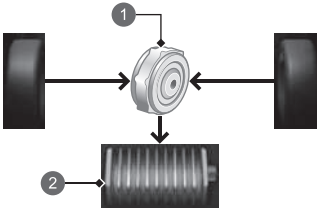
Models with B-type meter

Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: • Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): • The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. • The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: • The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. • The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

● **Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking**

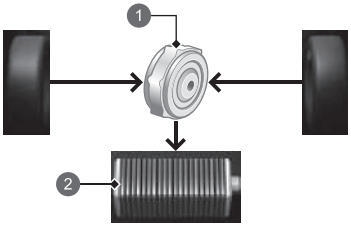
When regenerative braking is in operation

Models with A-type meter



❶ Motor
❷ High Voltage Battery

Models with B-type meter



❶ Motor
❷ High Voltage Battery

When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle. You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

● **Auto Engine Stop/Start**

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.
- The High Voltage battery is too low on charge.

Predictive Eco Assist

Predictive Eco Assist helps you drive more economically to your destination during navigation route guidance.

It predicts how much the high voltage battery can be charged by regenerative braking when driving downhill on the way to the destination, and operates in EV mode as much as possible.

If there are any stops on the way to the destination, it works more effectively if they are set as waypoints.

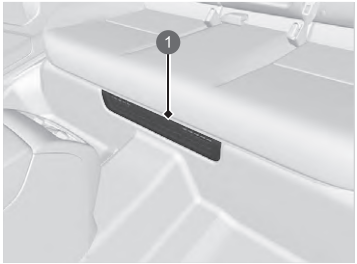
If you leave the suggested navigation route, Predictive Eco Assist may not function in a way that is suitable for your route.

You can turn Predictive Eco Assist on and off in Vehicle Settings using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 348

Safety Precautions

Do not cover the air intake



1 Air Intake

If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.

If a crash occurs

● Be careful of electric shock hazard.

▶If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

● Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

▶The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

● Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

▶Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

● Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

● The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

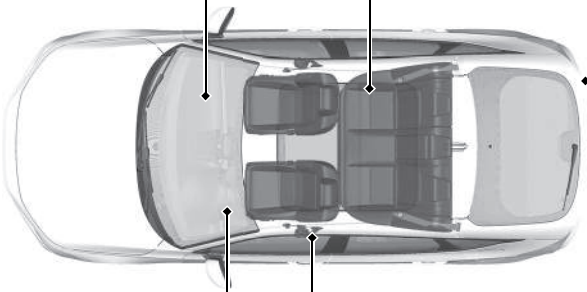
Safe Driving P. 41

Airbags P. 58

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 83

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 109

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 47

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

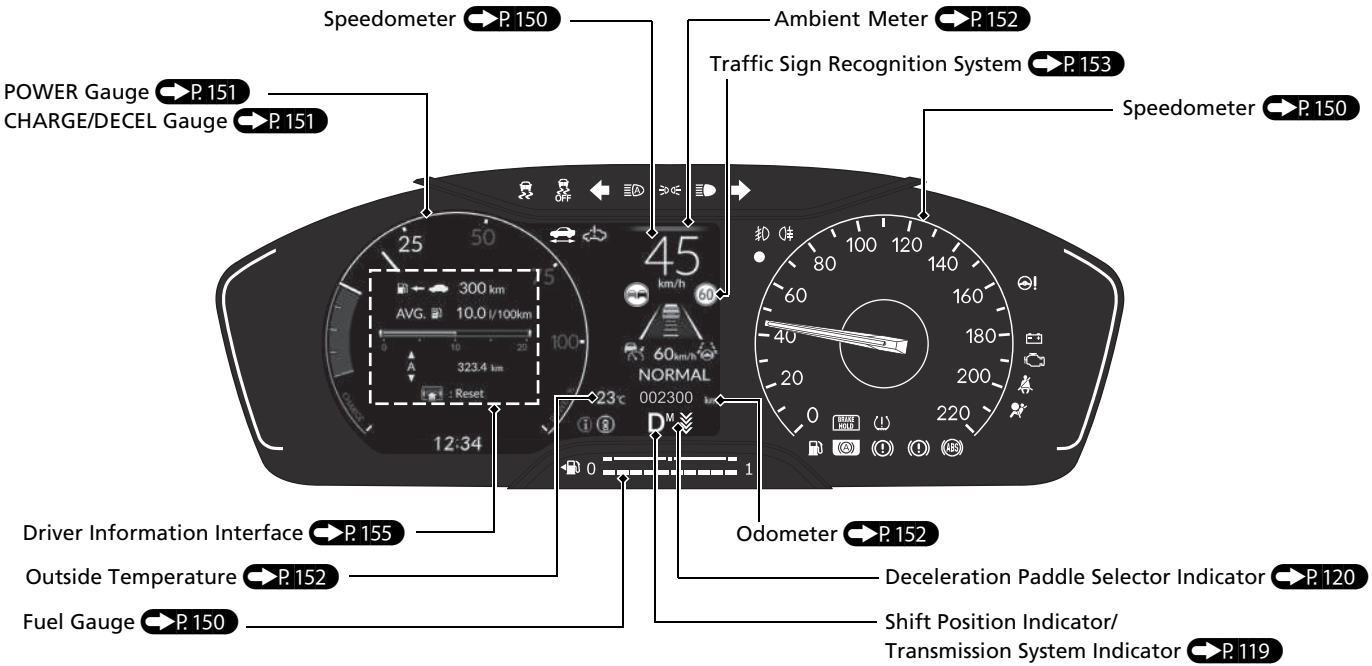
Before Driving Checklist P. 402

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel P. 113

Indicators P. 114/Gauges P. 150/Driver Information Interface P. 155, 172, 175

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

- You can change the gauge design.
  Change gauge design P. 191

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 153

POWER Gauge P. 151
CHARGE/DECEL Gauge P. 151

Speedometer P. 150

Ambient Meter P. 152

Ambient Meter P. 152

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge P. 151

Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area) P. 172

Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator P. 120

Shift Position Indicator/ Transmission System Indicator P. 119

Outside Temperature P. 152

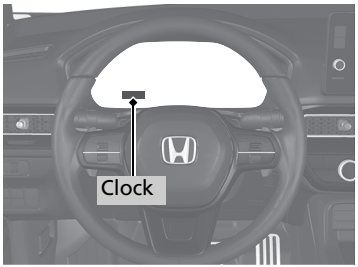
Fuel Gauge P. 150

Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area) P. 175

Odometer P. 152

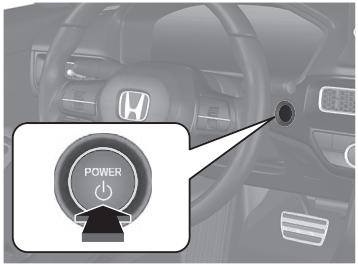
Controls P. 193

Clock P. 194



POWER Button P. 224

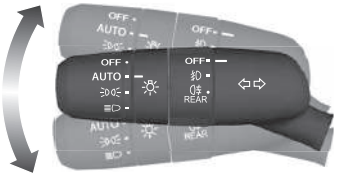
- Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals P. 228

Turn Signal Control Lever

Right



Left

Lights P. 226

Light Control Switches

High Beam

Low Beam

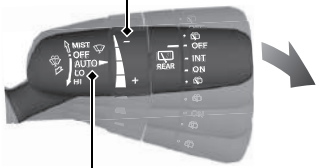
Flashing

Wipers and Washers

P. 240

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
−: Low sensitivity
+: High sensitivity



Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.

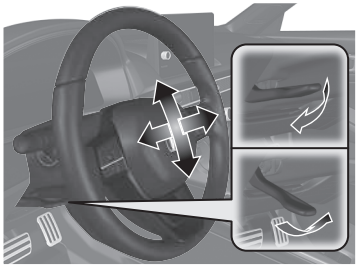
MIST
OFF
AUTO: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 246

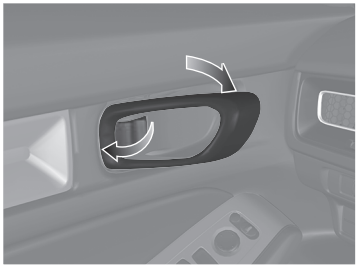
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



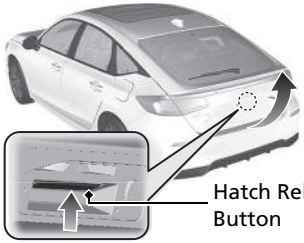
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 204

- Pull the either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Hatch P. 207

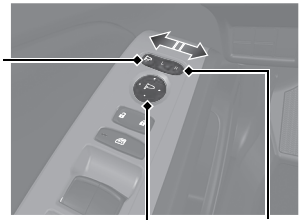


- Press the hatch release button to unlock and open the hatch when you carry the keyless remote.

Power Door Mirrors

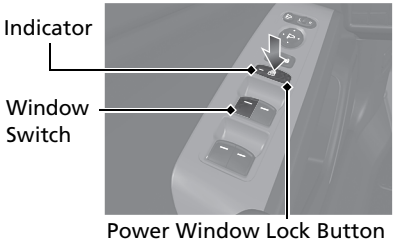
P. 249

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows P. 217

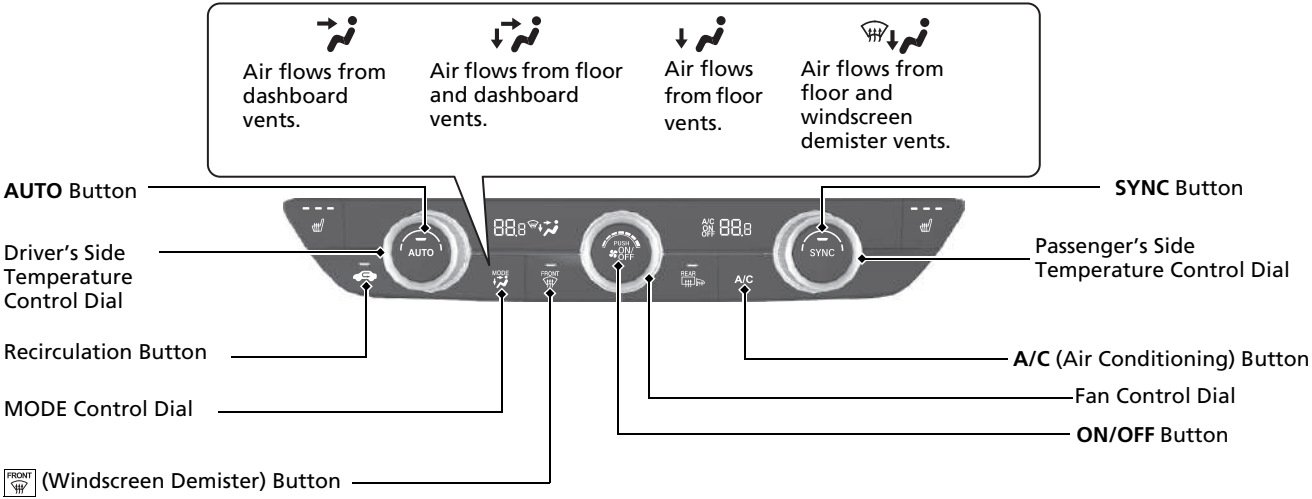
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

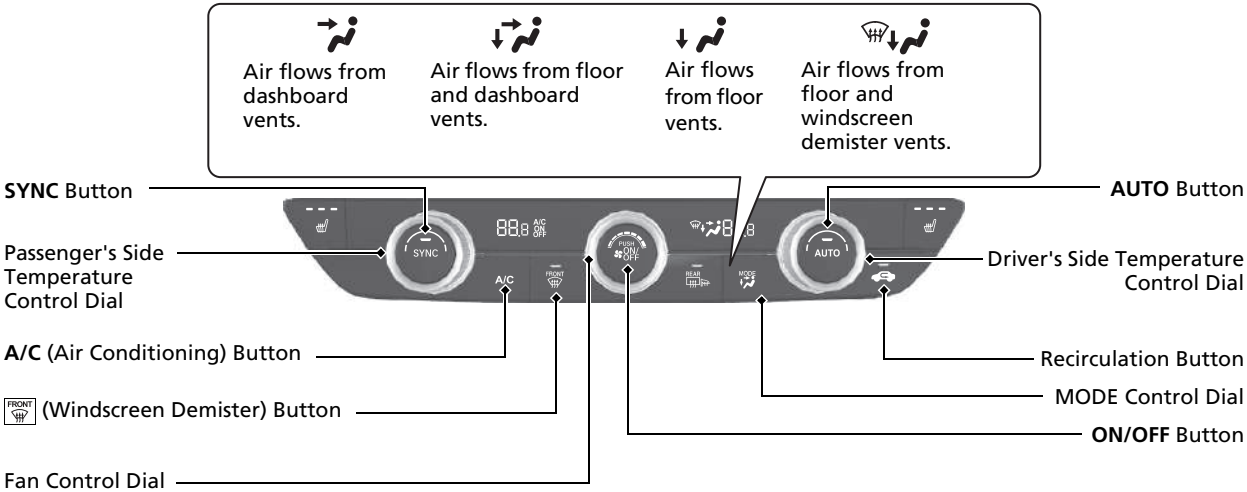


Climate Control System P. 278

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Left-hand Drive Type

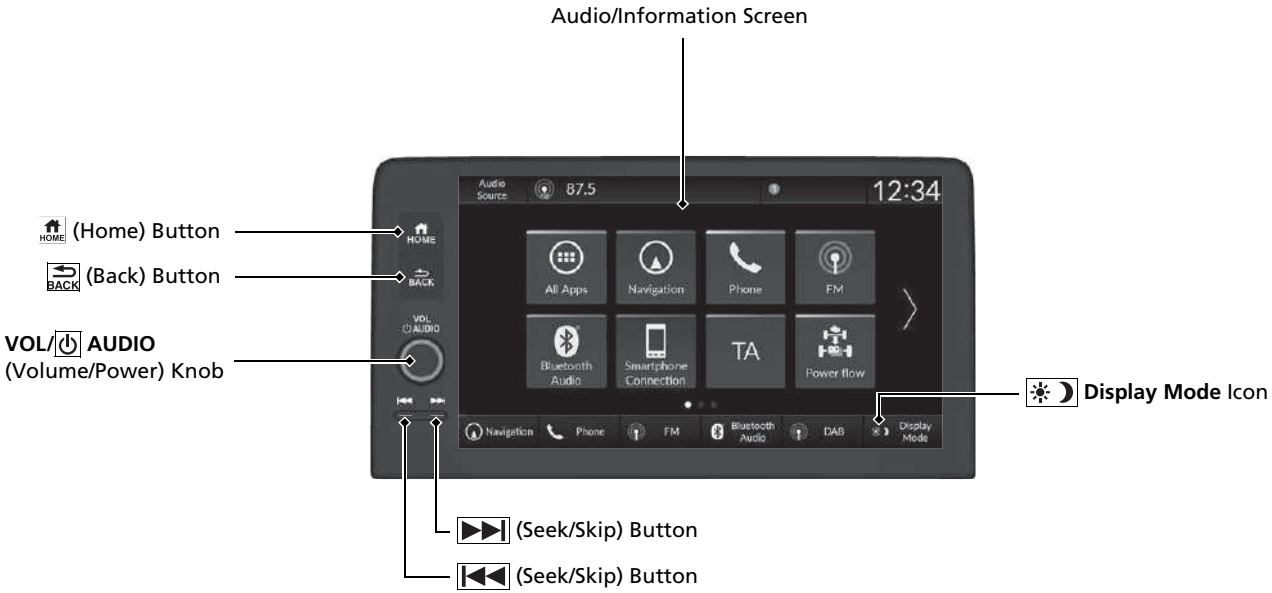



Air flows from dashboard vents.
Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
Air flows from floor vents.
Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
SYNC Button
Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
(Windscreen Demister) Button
Fan Control Dial
AUTO Button
Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
Recirculation Button
MODE Control Dial
ON/OFF Button
SYNC
A/C
FRONT
PUSH ON/OFF
REAR
MODE
AUTO

Features P. 285

Audio System P. 286

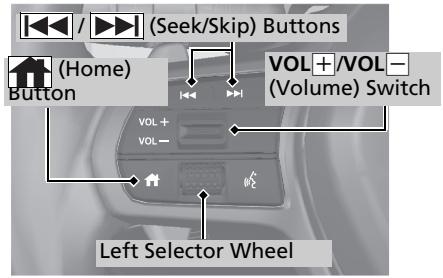
For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



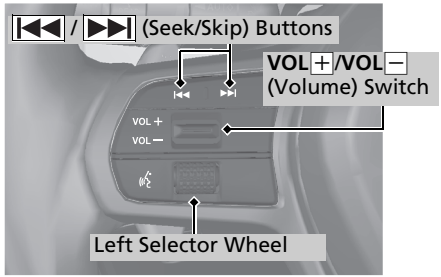
Audio Remote Controls

P. 292

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



- **VOL+/VOL−** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.

- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode

  Models with A-type meter

  Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  FM/DAB/AM/USB/Bluetooth/Apps

  Models with B-type meter

  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  Back/Telephone/FM/AM/Traffic/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Customized

  Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

  Radio: Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the preset radio station.

  iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:
  Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.

  Radio: Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the strong station.

  USB device:
  Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change a folder.

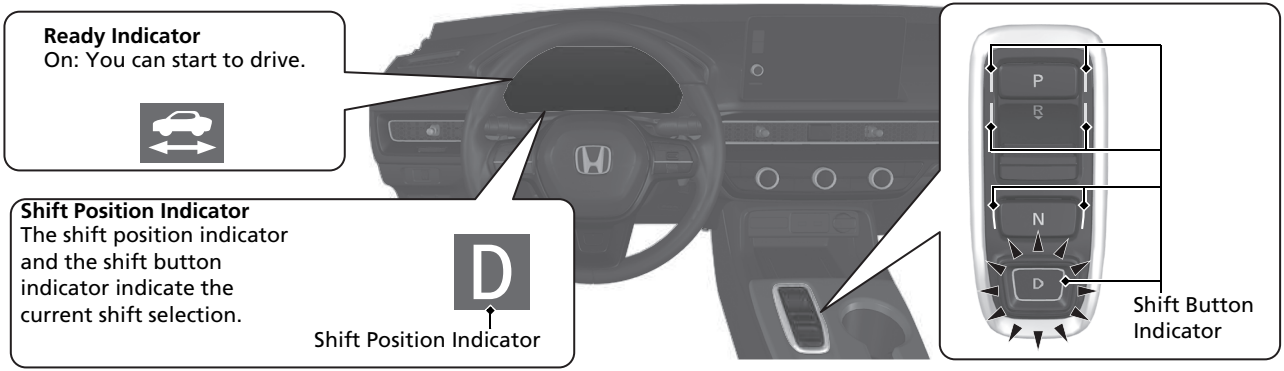
  iPod: Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change a song.

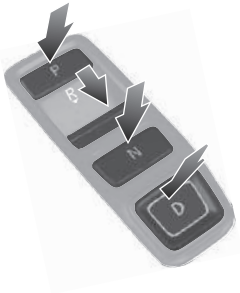
  Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

Driving P. 401

Transmission P. 417, 418

- Select P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.
- Shift selection





P **Park**
Press the P button.
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.
Transmission is locked.

R **Reverse**
Press back the R button.
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Press the N button.
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Press the D button.
Used for normal driving.
The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is on.

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 425

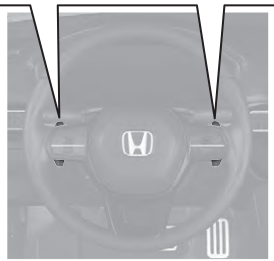
When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

Pull the ⊞ selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- **When SPORT mode is OFF**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.
- **When SPORT mode is ON**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge.

⊟ Paddle Selector

⊞ Paddle Selector



Models with A-type meter

When **SPORT** mode is OFF, the deceleration stage appears.

Deceleration Stage

When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.

Deceleration Stage

Models with B-type meter

When **SPORT** mode is OFF, the deceleration stage appears.

Deceleration Stage

When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.

Deceleration Stage

CMBS On and Off P. 476

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

VSA On and Off P. 455

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Deflation Warning System P. 457

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Adjustable Speed Limiter

P. 437

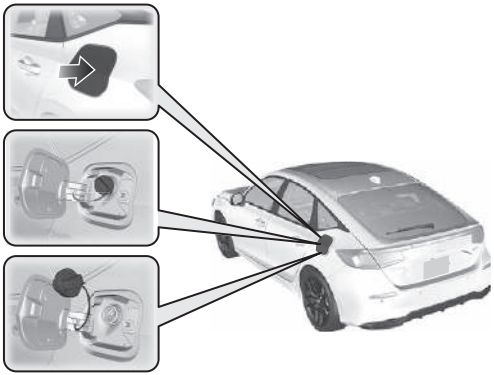
This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).

Refueling P. 570

Fuel recommendation:	**EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel** **Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher**
Fuel tank capacity:	**40 L (8.8 Imp gal)**

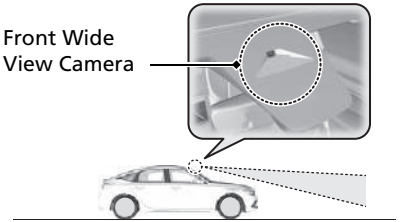
1. Unlock the driver's door.
   Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside P. 204
2. Press the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
3. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
4. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
5. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda Sensing

P. 468

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 472

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

P. 485

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

P. 505

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Traffic Jam Assist

P. 518

The traffic jam assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines.
Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

Road Departure Mitigation System

P. 528

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

P. 537

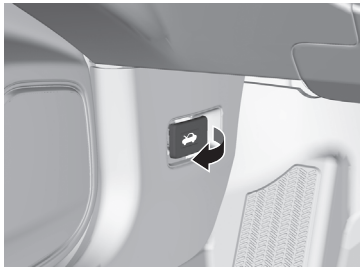
Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

Maintenance P. 575

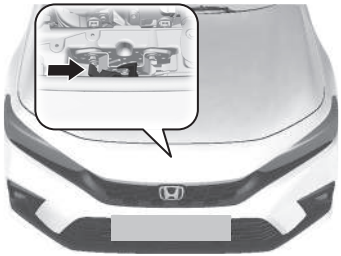
Under the Bonnet P. 592

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-Volt battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 615

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.

Lights P. 607

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Tyres P. 618

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Handling the Unexpected P. 641

Flat Tyre P. 644

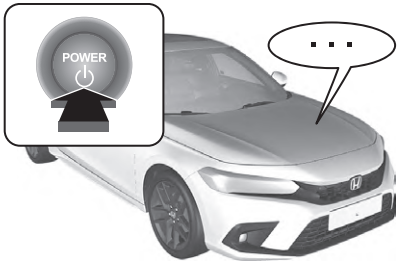
- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

Models with a compact spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in luggage area.

Power System Won't Start P. 668

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



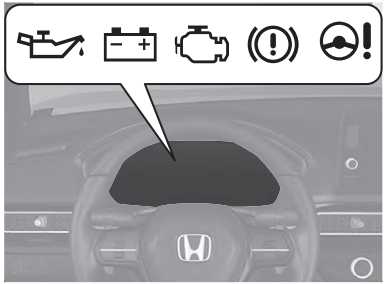
Overheating P. 676

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the power system cool down.

Indicators Come On

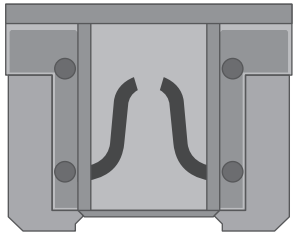
P. 678

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse P. 686

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 693

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

What to Do If

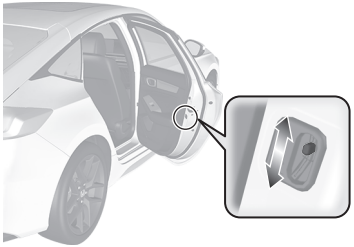
Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 554

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.



To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or any passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

Deflation Warning System P. 457

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why does the shift position automatically change to P when I open the driver's door to check for parking space lines when reversing?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Close the driver's door and manually change the shift position.

When opening the driver's door P. 422

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?**

A Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 42
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 44
- Safety Checklist 46

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 47
- Fastening a Seat Belt 52
- Seat Belt Inspection 56
- Anchorage Points 57

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 58
- Types of Airbags 60
- Front Airbags (SRS) 60
- Knee Airbags 66
- Centre Airbag 70
- Side Airbags 72
- Side Curtain Airbags 75
- Airbag System Indicators 77
- Airbag Care 79

Pop-up Hood System
- About the Pop-up Hood System 80
- Pop-up Hood System Care 82

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 83
- Safety of Infants and Small Children .. 86
- Safety of Larger Children 106

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 109

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 110

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

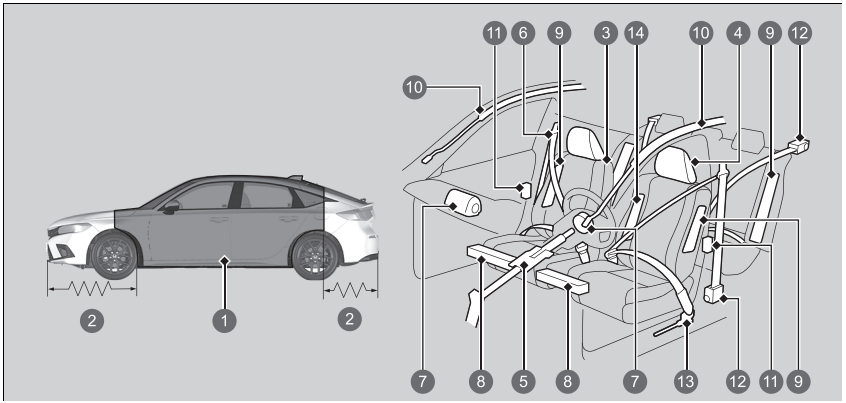
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



❶ Safety Cage
❷ Crush Zones
❸ Seats and Seat-Backs
❹ Head Restraints
❺ Collapsible Steering Column
❻ Seat Belts
❼ Front Airbags
❽ Knee Airbags
❾ Side Airbags
❿ Side Curtain Airbags
⓫ Door Locks
⓬ Seat Belt Tensioners
⓭ Outer Lap Pretensioners
⓮ Centre Airbag

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➔ **Seats** P. 250

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 258

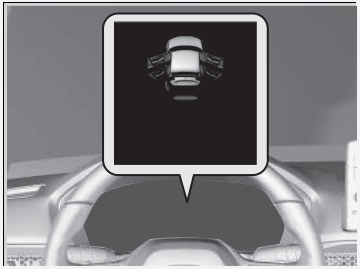
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 52

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➔ **Child Safety** P. 83

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or hatch open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the hatch tightly until the message disappears.

➔ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 136



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt P. 102

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

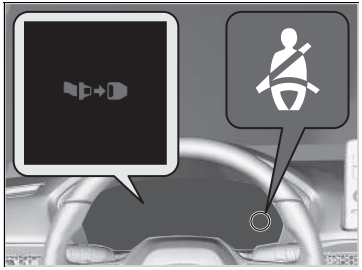
About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

Seat Belt Reminder



Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts. If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

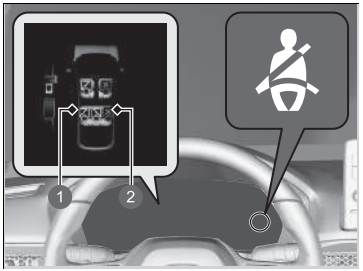
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat.
Check if:
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.
Check if:
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use.
A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used with a seating position occupied.

The display appears when:

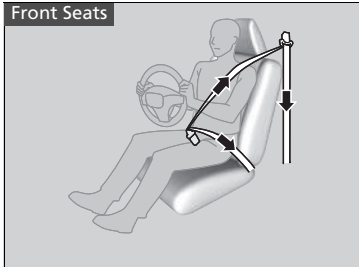
- Any of the rear passengers' seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is turned to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastens or unfastens their seat belt.

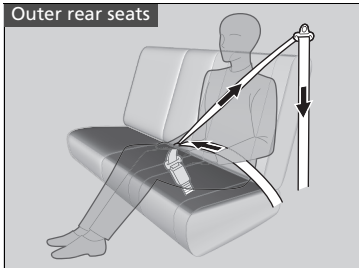
The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unfastened while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the driver's and passenger's knee airbag.





Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

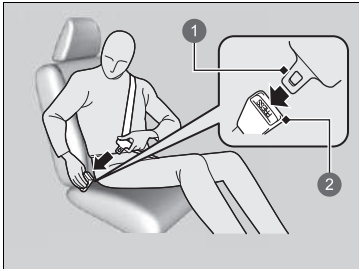
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on both sides of the vehicle also activates.

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➡ **Seats** P. 250

1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➡ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 47
➡ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 56

3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Continued

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.

1. Move the anchorage up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

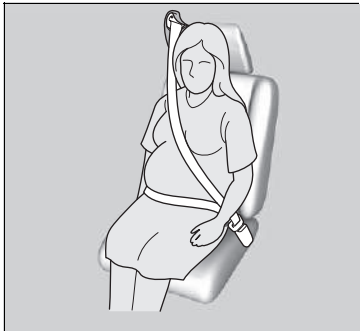
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

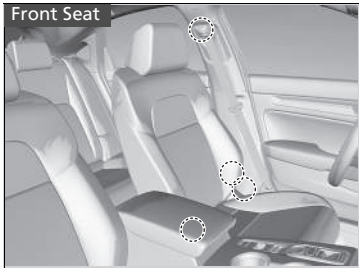
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

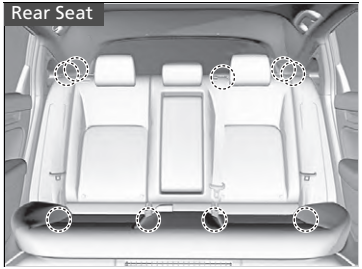
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, driver's knee, front passenger's knee, side, front centre and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two knee airbags. The driver's knee airbag is stored under the steering column; the front passenger's knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Four side airbags, one for the driver, one for the front passenger and two for the rear outboard. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- One centre airbag. The airbag is stored in the centre side of driver's seat-back. It is marked **CENTER AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the centre console that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front, driver's knee and front passenger's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with five types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Knee airbags:** Airbags under the steering column and under the glove box.
- **Centre airbags:** Airbag in the centre side of driver's seat-back.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's outer seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

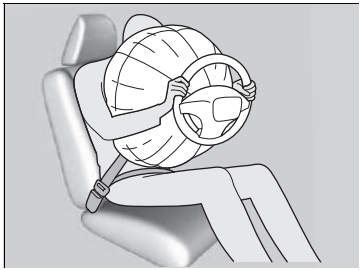
The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the built-in key.

Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch

❶ Passenger Front Airbag **ON/OFF** Indicator
❷ System Warning Label
❸ **ON/OFF** Switch

When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:
OFF: The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.
The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.
ON: The passenger front airbag is activated.
The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

Passenger Front Airbag Off System

WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

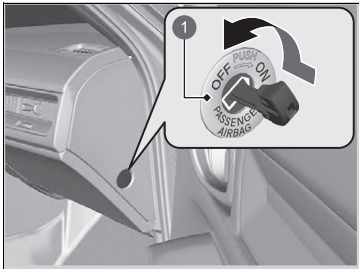
WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Continued

■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1 Passenger Front Airbag **ON/OFF** Switch

1. Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the built-in key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
   ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the built-in key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

To deactivate the passenger front airbag system

NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

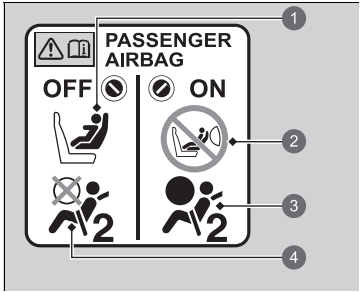
➡ **Protecting Infants** P. 86

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



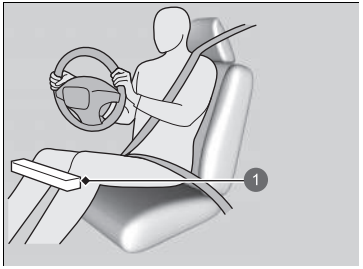
❶ Infant in a rear-facing child restraint system: May ride in front if it is unavoidable
❷ Cannot be seated in front
❸ Passenger front airbag is: Active
❹ Inactive

Knee Airbags

The knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to keep the driver and/or front passenger in the proper position and to help to maximise the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbag is designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations



❶ Driver's Knee Airbag Location

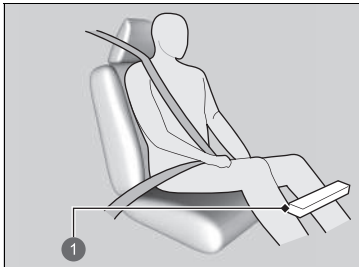
The knee airbag for the driver and the one for the front passenger are housed under the steering column and the glove box respectively.

Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Knee Airbags

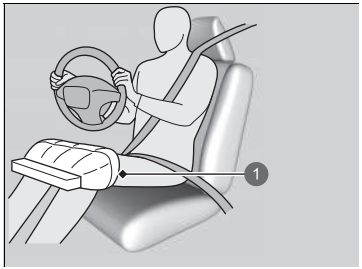
Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.

The driver and front passenger should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.



❶ Passenger's Knee Airbag Location

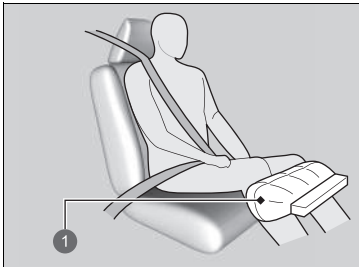
Operation



❶ Deployed Driver's Knee Airbag

The driver's and front passenger's knee airbag deploy at the same time as the driver's and front passenger's airbag respectively.

Continued



1 Deployed Passenger's Knee Airbag

■ When knee airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

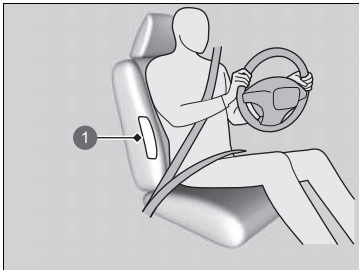
■ When knee airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Centre Airbag

The centre airbag is designed to help to protect the heads of the driver and front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Location

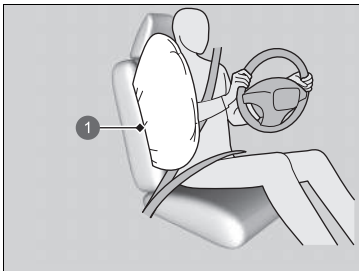


The centre airbag is housed in the centre side of the driver's seat-back.

It is marked **CENTER AIRBAG**.

❶ Centre Airbag Location

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the centre airbag to deploy.

❶ Centre Airbag

Centre Airbag

Make sure you and any front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of the centre airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the centre airbag. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or hurt someone if an airbag inflate.

Do not open the lid of the console compartment while driving.

Do not cover or replace the driver's seat-back cover without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering driver's seat-back covers can prevent your centre airbag from properly deploying during a side impact.

■ When the centre airbag deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause the centre airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

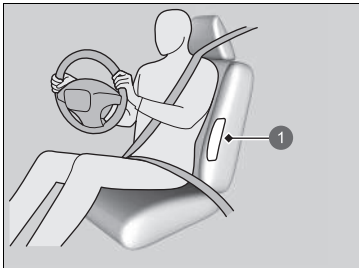
■ When the centre airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for the centre airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the centre airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

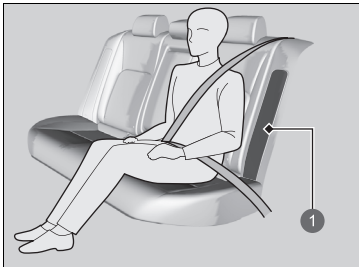
Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer rear seat occupant during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



❶ Side Airbag Location



❶ Side Airbag Location

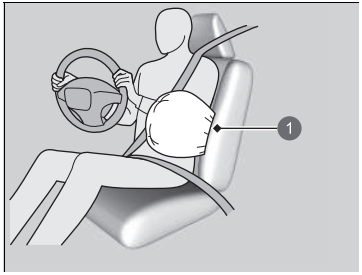
The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seatbacks and next to the outer rear seating positions.

Each are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

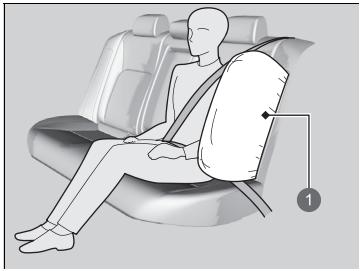
Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Operation



❶ Deployed Side Airbag



❶ Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Continued

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

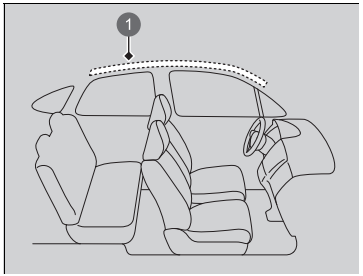
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

1 Side Curtain Airbag Location

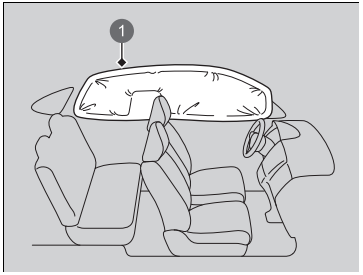
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Continued

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

❶ Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

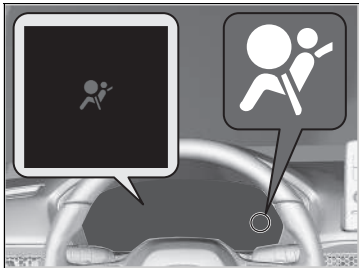
■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

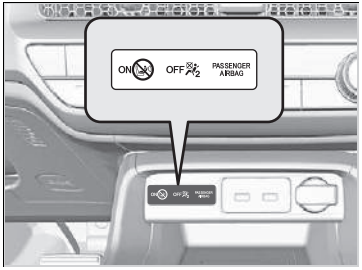
⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Continued

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

WARNING

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

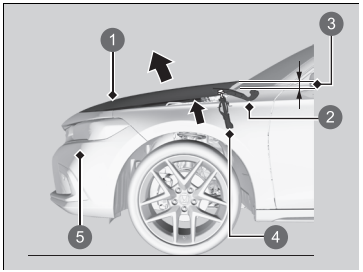
About the Pop-up Hood System

The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

The System Activates When

Your vehicle strikes a pedestrian or other objects at moderate or higher speed.

How the System Works



1. Bonnet
2. Hinge
3. Raises about 100mm
4. Power Unit Component
5. Pedestrian Impact Sensors

When the pedestrian impact sensors detect a certain amount of impact, the pop-up hood system is activated and the rear of the bonnet will raise.

The raised bonnet can help to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

The power units are located in the vehicle front side of the hinges.

About the Pop-up Hood System

WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns. Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to open the bonnet after the pop-up hood system has been activated. After the system activation, make sure the raised bonnet does not interfere with visibility, and then drive slowly and carefully.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, it may not work properly. Make sure the bonnet is fully closed before driving.

The following conditions may also activate the system.
- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

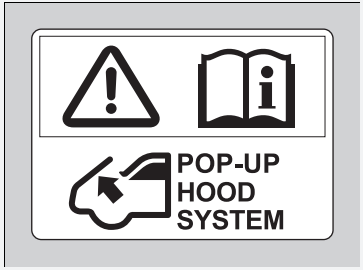
The system may not activate if your vehicle is:
- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

About the Pop-up Hood System

For the pop-up hood system to work properly:
- Always use the same size tyres as the original. The system may not read your vehicle speed correctly with the different size tyres.
- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.

Pop-up Hood System label is found under the bonnet:
Label Locations P. 110



Continued

■ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

■ When the power mode is set to ON

A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood. This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Pop-up Hood System Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any pop-up hood system components yourself.
However, if the pop-up hood system has ever activated, you need to have the control unit, and other related parts replaced by a dealer.

Pop-up Hood System Care

If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

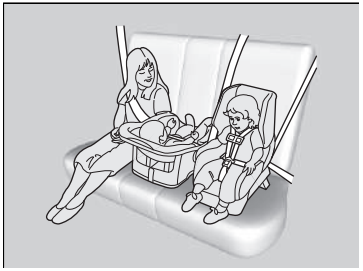
WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

Continued

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➡ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 89

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 217

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

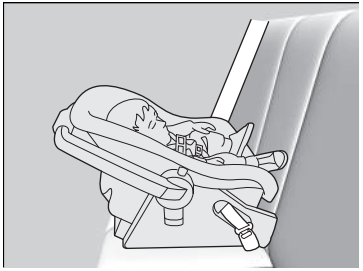
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 110

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

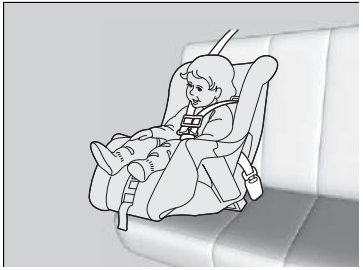
If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

Passenger Front Airbag Off System P. 63

Continued

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Continued

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

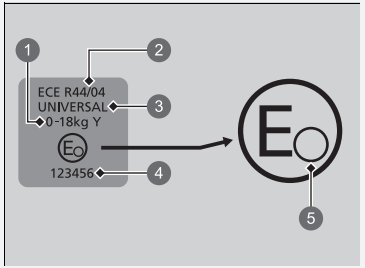
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size /ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

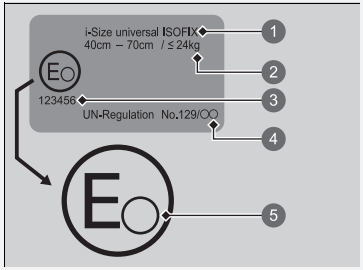
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



1. "Mass group"
2. Regulation number
3. Category
4. Approval number
5. Country code

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



1. Category
2. Size and weight indication
3. Approval number
4. Regulation number
5. Country code

Continued

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Left-hand drive type

Passenger Airbag ON

Passenger Airbag OFF

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed when the front passenger airbag is on.

*3 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4 If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, when adjustable raise the head restraint to the highest position.

- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
- The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Right-hand Drive Type

Passenger Airbag ON

Passenger Airbag OFF

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed when the front passenger airbag is on.

*3 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4 If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, when adjustable raise the head restraint to the highest position.

- **Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.**
- **The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.**

Continued

All models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number						
	Size groups Weight Stature		1		2	3	4
			Front passenger*1		2nd row*4		
			Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch position		Left	Centre	Right
			ON*2	OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes*3	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg					
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*3	Yes*3	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg					
	Group III	22-36kg					
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS *5	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg					
	Group I	9-18kg					
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3	B3

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed when the front passenger airbag is on.

*3 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4 If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, when adjustable raise the head restraint to the highest position.

*5 The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

- Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Continued

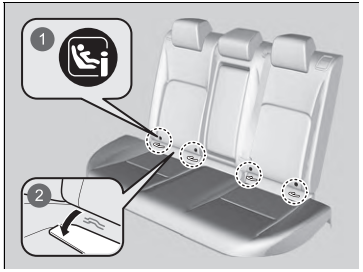
Europe Genuine CRS List

UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40cm to 83cm up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe	Universal Belted
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX
76cm to 105cm 8kg to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX
100cm to 150cm 15kg to 36kg (3.5 years - 12 years)	Honda KIDFIX	i-Size Booster seat

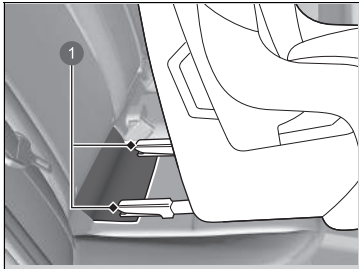
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the anchorage marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
2. Pull out the anchorage covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

❶ Marks
❷ Cover



3. Place the child restraint system so that the probes are on the cover.

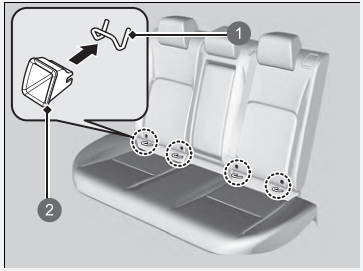
❶ Probes

Continued

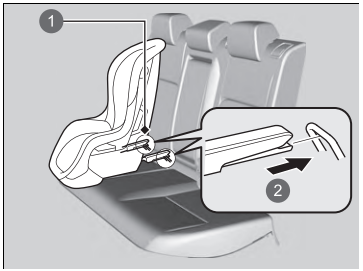
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

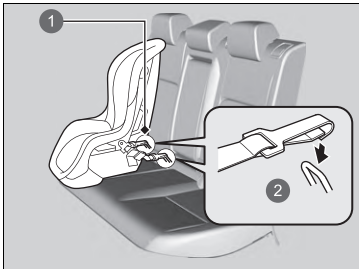
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



❶ Lower Anchorage
❷ Guide-cup



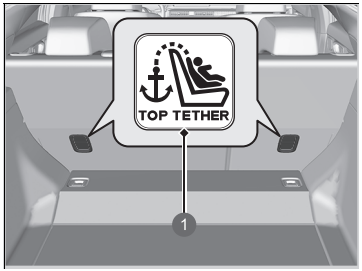
❶ Lower Anchorages
❷ Rigid Type



❶ Lower Anchorages
❷ Flexible Type

4. Attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

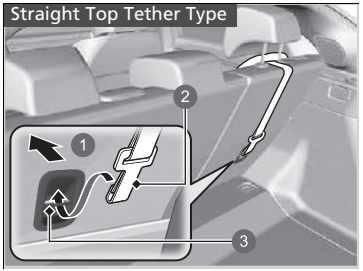
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

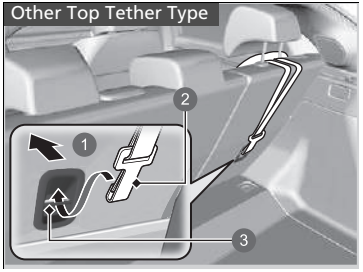
For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

Continued



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

5. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
▶ Retract the luggage area cover.
➔ **Luggage Area Cover** P. 269

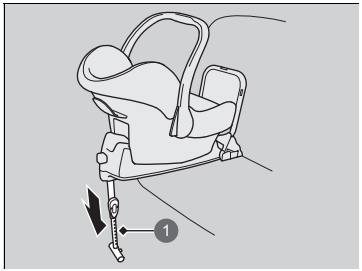
6. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
▶ Make sure the strap is not twisted.

7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



❶ Support Leg

Child restraint system with support leg

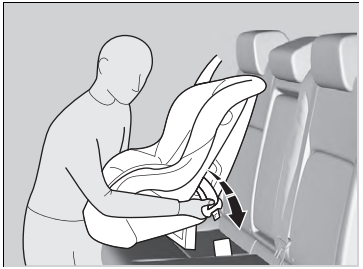
4. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

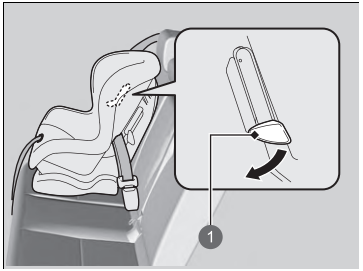
▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.

▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Continued

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



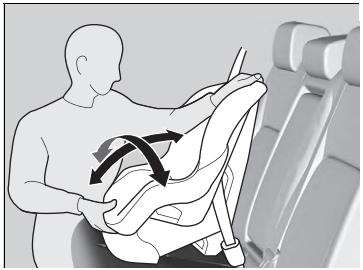


1 Tab

1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

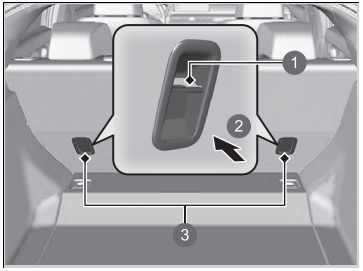
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Continued

Adding Security with a Tether



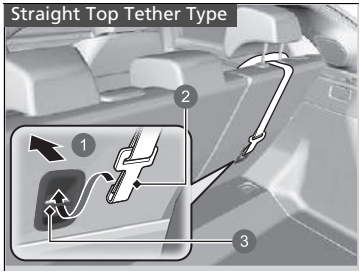
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Anchorage
2. Ahead of the Vehicle
3. Tether Anchorage Points

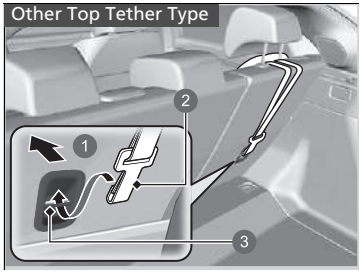
Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

1. Retract the luggage area cover.
   ➡ **Luggage Area Cover** P. 269
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
   ▶ Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

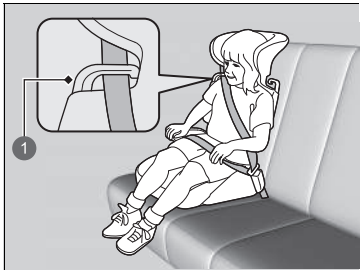
⚠WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the [ ] mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

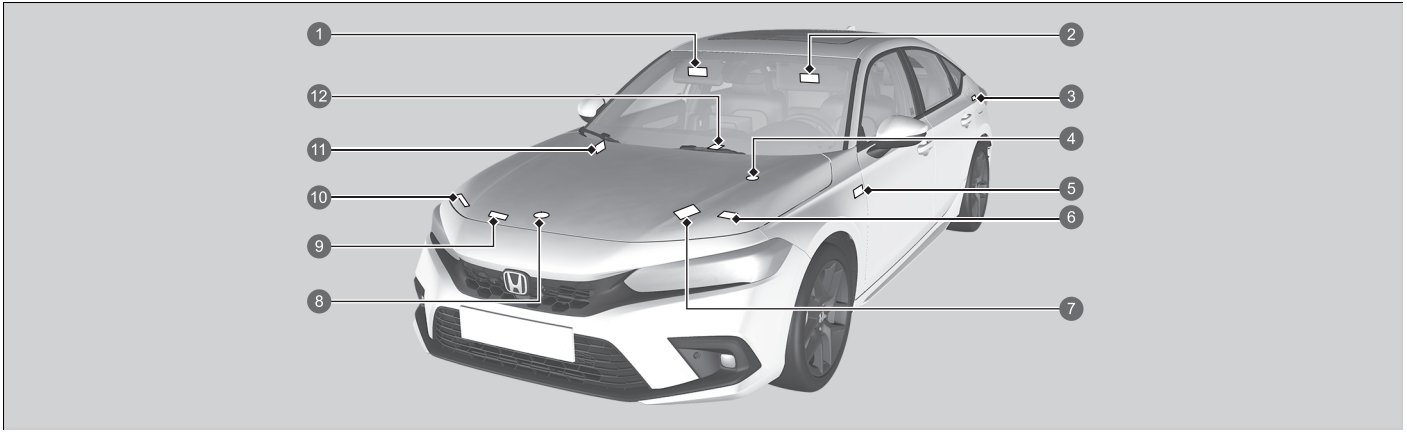
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 83
2. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 83
3. Fuel ➔ P. 570
4. Inverter Coolant Reserve Tank Cap
5. Passenger Front Airbag Off System (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 65
6. Pop-up Hood ➔ P. 80
7. 12-volt battery ➔ P. 628
8. Radiator Cap
9. Air Conditioner ➔ P. 631
10. Front Bulkhead Cover ➔ P. 593

⓫ Passenger Front Airbag Off System (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 65
⓬ Wireless Charger ➔ P. 273

Continued

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 114
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages..... 136
Gauges and Driver Information Interface ..150
Gauges..... 150
Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter) 155
Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type-Meter) 172
Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter) 175

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

Display messages by setting **Warning Message** to ON via the audio/information screen.
You can also change the message language.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→P. 116
*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→P. 118
BRAKE HOLD *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→P. 118
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→P. 118
*1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→P. 118
*1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→P. 119
D	Shift Position Indicator	→P. 119
M	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→P. 120
	Transmission System Indicator	→P. 119
*1	Power System Indicator	→P. 118
	Ready Indicator	→P. 119
EV *1	**EV** Indicator	→P. 119
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→P. 120
	Low Fuel Indicator	→P. 120
ABS *1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→P. 120
*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→P. 121
ON OFF *1	Passenger Front Airbag On/ Off Indicators	→P. 121

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→P. 121
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	→P. 122
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→P. 122
*1	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	→P. 124
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→P. 122
	Lights On Indicator	→P. 122
	High Beam Indicator	→P. 122
*1	Auto High-Beam* /Adaptive Driving Beam* Indicator	→P. 123
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	→P. 123
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	→P. 123
ECON	**ECON** Mode Indicator	→P. 127

SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator	→P. 127
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator	→P. 127
INDIVIDUAL	**INDIVIDUAL** Mode Indicator	→P. 127
	System Message Indicator	→P. 128
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 129
LIM	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 129
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator*	→P. 131
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→P. 126
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→P. 125
*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	→P. 130
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 130

*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	→P. 131
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 131
*1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	→P. 132
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	→P. 132
*1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	→P. 132
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	→P. 132
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator	→P. 132
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→P. 133
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	→P. 135

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 681

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	• **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 683 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 681 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 683

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 551
(A)	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 551
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems or electric vehicle system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	➔ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 680
	Power System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.	• **Stays on constantly** -Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. • **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Ready Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 411
EV	**EV** Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.	—
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ➡ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 624 ➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 679
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
		• Blinks if you cannot select P due to a transmission system failure.	• Set the parking brake when parking. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
D	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	➡ **Shifting** P. 418

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	• Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. • Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector. • Comes on with **M** when **SPORT** mode is selected and pulling the paddle selector.	➡ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 425
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. • Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 49
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 6.0 Litres/1.32 Imp gal left).	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.1	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 554

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
ON OFF	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators	• When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds. When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.	➡ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 63
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, agile handling assist or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 454 ➡ **Hill start assist system** P. 413
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 455
		Models with A-type meter • Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 682
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 607
		• Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 556
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➡ **Lights** P. 226
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. • Comes on when the adaptive driving beam* is active.	➡ **Adaptive Driving Beam*** P. 237

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Auto High-Beam*/ Adaptive Driving Beam* Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam*/adaptive driving beam* are met.	**Auto High-Beam*** P. 234 **Adaptive Driving Beam*** P. 237
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	**Fog Lights** P. 230
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	**Fog Lights** P. 230

* Not available on all models

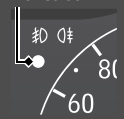
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialise process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been initialised.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be initialised. ➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 458
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre*, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
Models with A-type meter Indicator Models with B-type meter Indicator 	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Right-hand drive type Depress and hold the brake pedal before setting the power mode to ON. All models • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
Models with A-type meter Indicator  Models with B-type meter Indicator 	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	➡ **Security System Alarm** P. 211

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
ECON	**ECON** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **ECON**.	**ECON Mode** P. 433
SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SPORT**.	Models with A-type meter • The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected. Models with B-type meter • The ambient meter goes off and gauges in the instrument panel lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected. **Drive Mode Switch** P. 429
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **NORMAL**.	**Drive Mode Switch** P. 429
INDIVIDUAL	**INDIVIDUAL** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **INDIVIDUAL**.	**Drive Mode Switch** P. 429

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
ⓘ	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. **Models with A-type meter** • While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select **Information** to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 155 • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed. **Models with B-type meter** • While the indicator is on, roll the right selector wheel to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 175 • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the right selector wheel is rolled.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when the adjustable speed limiter is set.	➡ **Adjustable Speed Limiter** P. 437
LIM	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down.	➡ **Intelligent Speed Limiter** P. 444

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 405 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 485

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 405 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 505
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator*	• Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on.	• Each time you press the interval button, the following interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following intervals. ➡ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 500

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 134
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	➔ **Safety Support** P. 169, 188
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 134
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➔ **Safety Support** P. 169, 188
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 528

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS or blind spot information system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 405 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
		• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor. • Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.	• **Comes on while driving** - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. • The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System** P. 460

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS and blind spot information system are on. • Lights up in green and grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS or blind spot information system, or any two of these systems are off. • Lights up in grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system are off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 531 ➔ **Blind Spot Information System On and Off** P. 463 ➔ **CMBS On and Off** P. 476

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

The warning and information messages appear only on the driver information interface.

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button, select **Information**, then press the left selector wheel to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Models with B-type meter

Roll the right selector wheel to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

■ Icons

Since messages will not display on the driver information interface when Warning Message is set to OFF, you can check the messages below. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

➔ **Red Icons** P. 137
➔ **Amber Icons** P. 139
➔ **Green Icons** P. 145
➔ **Other Icons** P. 146

Display messages by setting **Warning message** to ON via the audio/information screen. You can also change the message language.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Red Icons

Icon	Message
STOP	**Critical system failure detected. Stop driving when safe**
	Steering assist reduced. Stop driving when safe.
	Brake performance reduced. Stop driving when safe.
	Brake fluid low. Do not drive. Check fluid level.
P	**Parking brake engaged**
	Release parking brake
	Cannot set cruise: Parking brake is applied
	Cruise cancelled: Parking brake was applied
EB	**Brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.**

Icon	Message
ES	**Brake system problem. Do not drive.**
	Fasten seat belt
2	**Fasten passenger's seat belt**
	➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 49
	12 volt battery charging system problem. Do not drive.

Continued

Icon	Message
	Engine oil pressure low. **Stop engine.** **Do not drive.** ➡ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 678
	Engine temperature too hot. **Do not drive.** **Allow engine to cool.** ➡ **Overheating** P. 676
	Supplemental restraint system problem
	Check rear seats

Icon	Message
	Door open
	Tailgate open
	Door and tailgate open
	Steering required
	Lane departure

Icon	Message
	Parking sensor system problem
	Approaching object

■ **Amber Icons**

Icon	Message
	Apply parking brake to keep vehicle stationary
	➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 485 ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 472
	Steering required
	Lane departure
	Outside temperature low. Road surface may be frozen.
	Temperature too low for vehicle to operate

Continued

Icon	Message
	Please wait while vehicle warms up
30 km/h	**Speed Alarm** P. 163, 182
	Emissions system problem. **Power may be reduced.**
	Emission system problem. **Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.**
	Emission system problem. **Do not drive.**
	Engine cooling system problem. **Power may be reduced.**

Icon	Message
	Fuel gauge system problem. **Level not accurate.**
	Fuel low
	Transmission system problem. **Performance may be reduced.**
P	**Transmission system problem.** **Apply parking brake when parked.**
STOP	**Transmission system problem.** **Do not drive.**
STOP + P	**Transmission system problem.** **Park not available.**

Icon	Message
P	**Shift to Park**
N → P	**Neutral-hold mode ON. Shift to P when done**
ABS	**Anti-lock brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.**
VS	**Brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.**
BO	**Brake system problem. Do not depress Brake + Accelerator together.**
ES	**Brake system problem. Brake performance may be reduced.**

Icon	Message
	Reduced stopping power. Avoid heavy deceleration and high speed.
EP	**Electric parking brake system problem. Parking brake not available.**
	Vehicle stability assist system problem. Traction and handling may be reduced.
	Systems initializing... Continue driving.
	Hill start assist problem. Vehicle may roll upon brake release.
BRAKE HOLD	**Brake hold system problem. Apply brake when stopped.**

Continued

Icon	Message
	Brake hold disabled. **Apply brake pedal.**
	Cruise cancelled: **Depress brake pedal**
	To release parking brake: **Brake + Push**
	Pop-up hood system problem
	Electric power steering system problem. **Steering assist reduced.**
	Electric power steering system problem. **No steering assist.** **Do not drive.**
	Driver attention level low. **Take a rest**

Icon	Message
AUTO	**Automatic lighting control system problem.** **Manual controls available.**
	Headlight system problem. **Headlight performance may be reduced.**
	Models with auto high-beam **Auto high-beam problem.** **Manual controls available.** Models with adaptive driving beam **Adaptive driving beam problem.** **Manual controls available.**
	Keyless remote not detected
	Change keyless remote battery **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 629

Icon	Message
	Smart entry system problem
	Tyre pressure monitor system problem
	Tyre pressures low. Check pressure in all tyres and initialise deflation warning system in vehicle settings.
	Adaptive cruise control system problem

Icon	Message
	Collision mitigation braking system problem
	Lane keeping assist system problem
	Road departure mitigation system problem
	Service due soon ➡ **Service Reminder System*** P. 580
	Service due now ➡ **Service Reminder System*** P. 580

* Not available on all models

Continued

Icon	Message
	Service overdue **Service Reminder System*** P. 580
	Blind spot information system problem
	Blind spot information not available
	Check charging system

Icon	Message
	Low charge. **Power reduced.**
	Power system temperature low. **Power may be reduced.**
	Power system temperature high. **Power may be reduced.**
	Power system problem. **Power may be reduced.**
	12 volt battery charging system problem. **Power may be reduced.**
	Power system problem. **Power may be reduced.**
	Power system problem. **Do not drive.**
	Power system problem. **Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.**

* Not available on all models

Icon	Message
	Acoustic vehicle alerting system problem
	High voltage battery charge too low. Vehicle cannot start

■ Green Icons

Icon	Message
	Brake hold system standby

Continued

■ Other Icons

Icon	Message
	Outside temperature low. **Road surface may be frozen.**
	Engine temperature near limit. **Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.**
	Have you checked engine oil level lately? **Check and reset in vehicle settings.** ➡ **Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder** P. 606
	To shift: **Depress brake pedal**
	To shift: **Release accelerator pedal**
	Gear position is N. **Release accelerator pedal**

Icon	Message
	Cannot set cruise: **Brake pedal is applied**
STOP +	**To shift:** **Vehicle must be stopped**
	Models with B-type meter **Gear unavailable.** **Wait and try again**
BRAKE HOLD	**Brake hold system OFF**
+ BRAKE HOLD	**To enable brake hold:** **Seat belt + Push**
+ BRAKE HOLD	**To disable brake hold:** **Brake + Push**

Icon	Message
	To enable brake hold: Fasten seat belt
	Fasten seat belt
	Cannot set cruise: Fasten seat belt
	Cruise cancelled: Fasten seat belt
	Driver attention level low
	Cannot set cruise: Speed too high
	Cruise cancelled: Speed too high
	Cannot set cruise: System not available
	Cruise cancelled: System not available
	Cruise will cancel soon

Icon	Message
	Cannot set cruise: Too close to vehicle ahead
	Cruise cancelled: Too close to vehicle ahead
	Cannot set cruise: Slope too steep
	Cruise cancelled: Slope too steep
	Cannot set cruise: Slope too steep
	Cruise cancelled: Slope too steep
	Cannot set cruise: Shift to Drive
	Cruise cancelled: Shift to Drive
RES/+ START	**To resume cruise: Use “RES/+” switch**

Continued

Icon	Message
	Cruise cancelled: Loss of traction
	Press switch to operate
LIM	**Press switch to operate ACC**
OFF	**Lane keeping assist cannot operate**
	Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high
	Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.

Icon	Message
	Road departure mitigation activated
	Some driver assist systems available
	To start vehicle: Brake + Push Right-hand Drive Type **To start vehicle: Fully depress Brake + Push**
	Accessory mode
	To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 670

Icon	Message
	Pressing button again twice or holding will cause ignition OFF & power loss

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

Speedometer

You can set the speedometer and the displayed measurements to read in either km/h or mph.

Speed/Distance Units P. 170, 189
Customized Features P. 348

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches 0. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

POWER Gauge

Shows the output of the electric motor.

CHARGE/DECEL Gauge

Shows the degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged.
When the deceleration paddle selector is being used, it shows the strength of deceleration.

Models with B-type meter

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining high voltage battery charge level.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:
- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the high voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

Continued

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Ambient Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner with **SPORT** mode off.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside temperature low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

You can adjust the temperature reading.

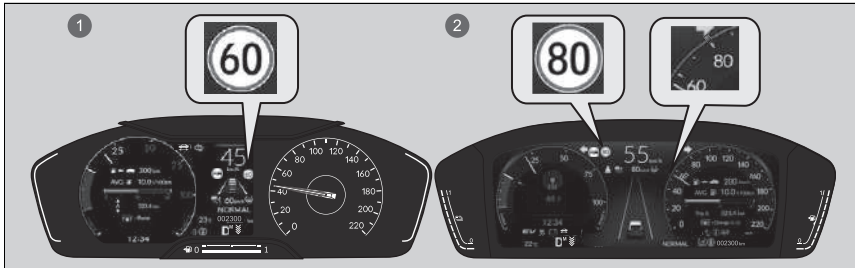
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.

The indicator blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition System is exceeded.

➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 537



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter

Continued

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist.

➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 485
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 505
➔ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 518

Models with A-type meter

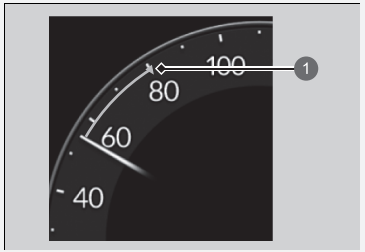
Clock

Shows the clock.

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist

Models with B-type meter

When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.



1 Set Speed

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 194

Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer and have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low**, **Engine temperature too hot** or **Reduced stopping power** message is displayed.

➡ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 678
➡ **Overheating** P. 676
➡ **If the Reduced Stopping Power Warning Appears** P. 679

■ Switching the Display

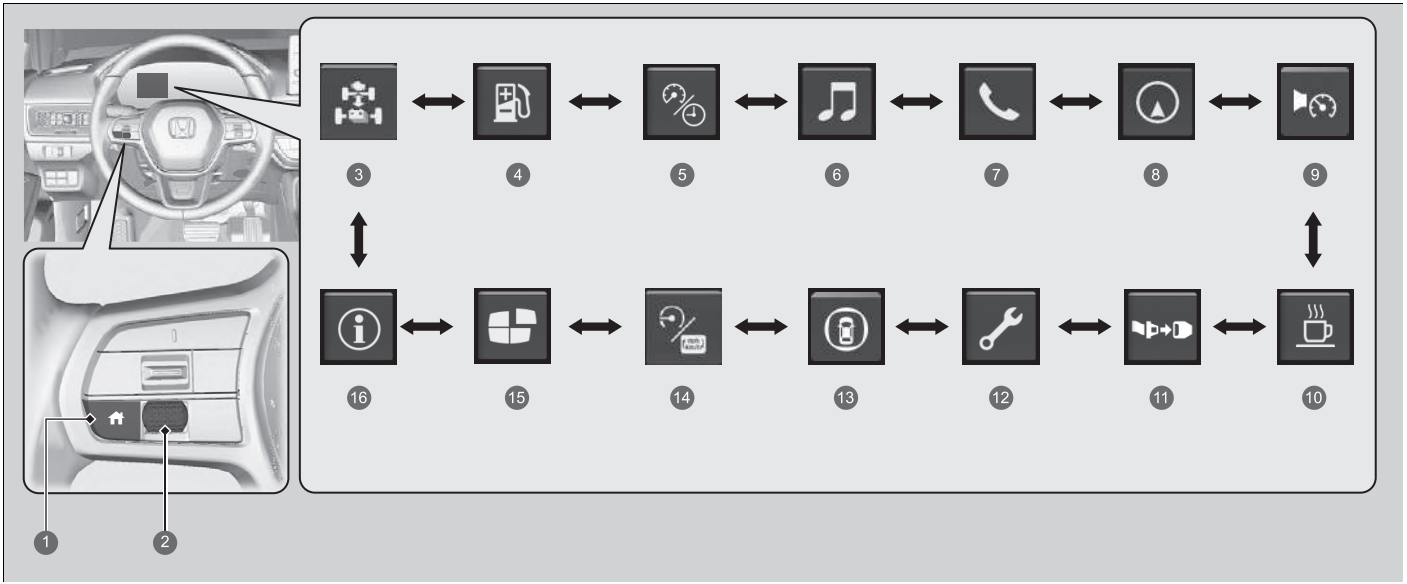
Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➡ **Customize Display** P. 171

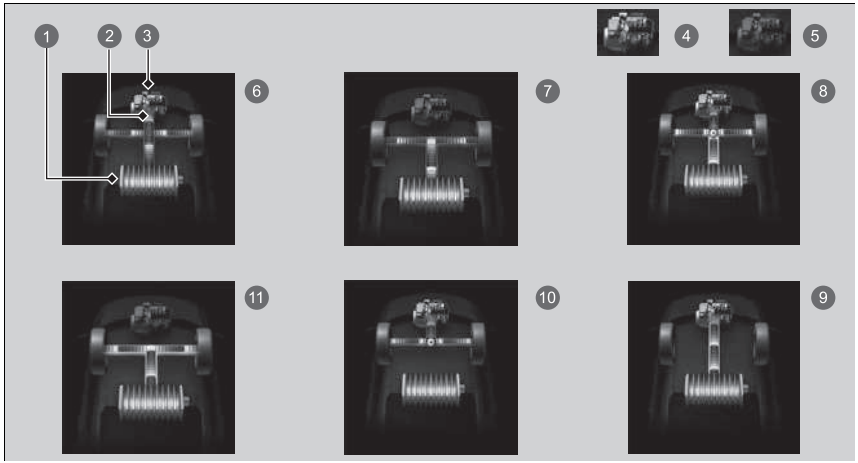
Continued



1. (Home) Button
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. **Power flow** P. 157
4. **Range & fuel** P. 158
5. **Speed & time** P. 160
6. **Audio** P. 161
7. **Phone** P. 161
8. **Navigation** P. 162
9. **Speed alarm** P. 163
10. **Driver attention** P. 164
11. **Seat belts** P. 168
12. **Maintenance** P. 168
13. **Safety support** P. 169
14. **No content** P. 170
15. **Customize display** P. 171
16. **Information** P. 171

Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source, remaining battery level, and whether the battery is being charged.



1. High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
2. Power Flow
3. Engine
4. Engine ON
5. Engine OFF
6. **Hybrid (HV)**: Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.
7. **Electric Vehicle (EV)**: Power is supplied by the motor.
8. **Engine (Direct Drive)**: The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
9. The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
10. Power is being supplied by the engine only.
11. **Regeneration**: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

Continued

Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

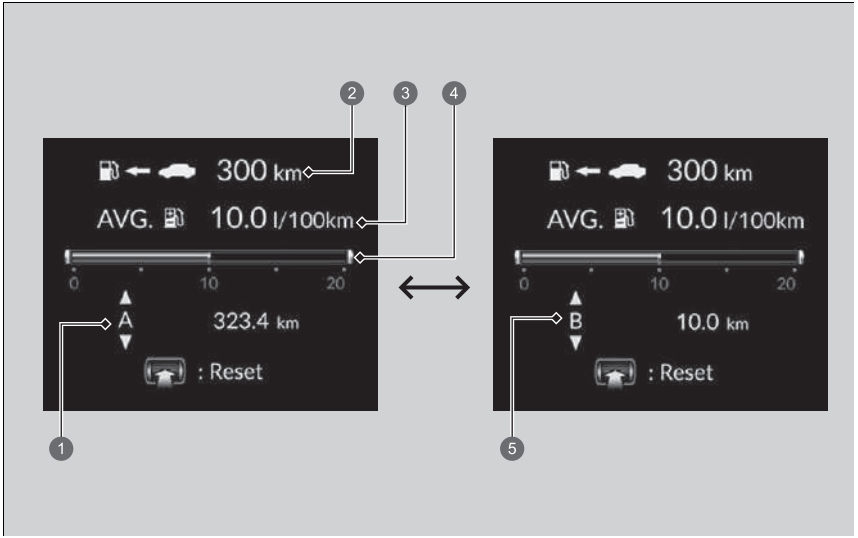
The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the high voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Range
3. Average Fuel Economy
4. Instant Fuel Economy
5. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or mpg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or mpg.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

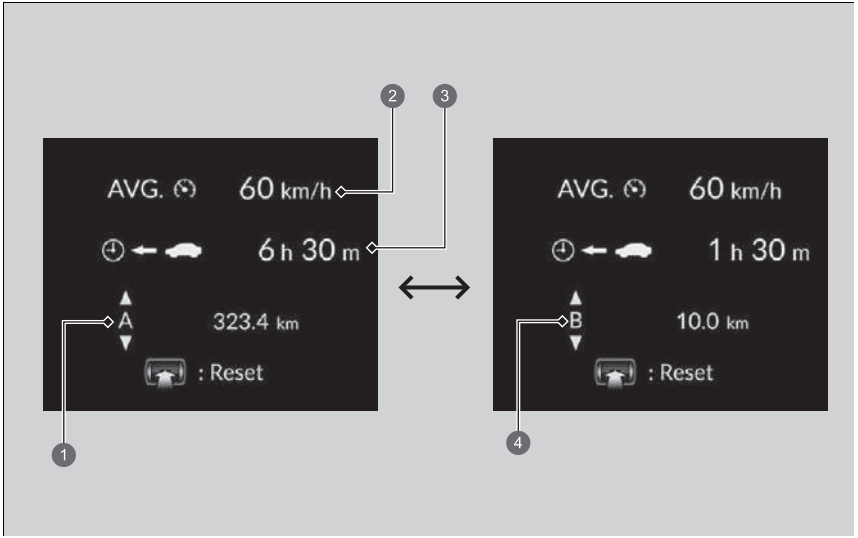
Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Continued

Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Average Speed
3. Elapsed Time
4. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

➡ **Trip meter** P. 159

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

➡ **Display Audio** P. 288

■ Phone

Shows the current phone information.

➡ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 365

Continued

Navigation

Compass

Shows the compass screen.

Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual
Android Auto™ P. 341
Apple CarPlay P. 337

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.
Customized Features P. 348

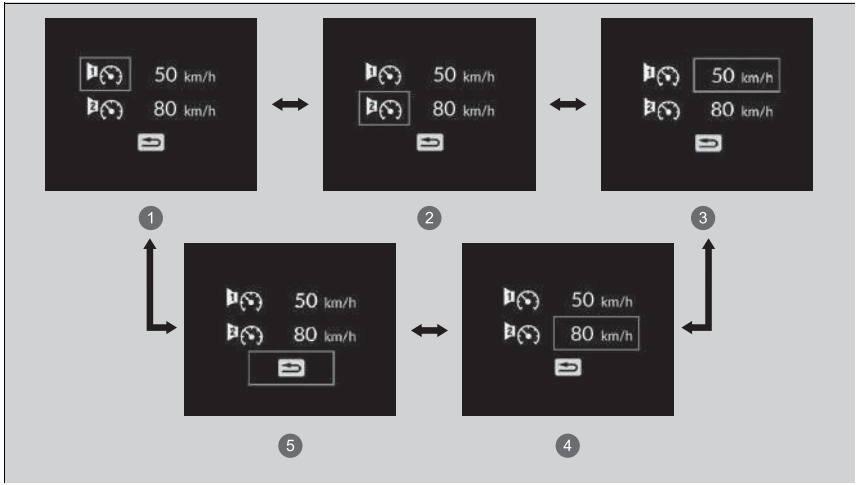
Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.
Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



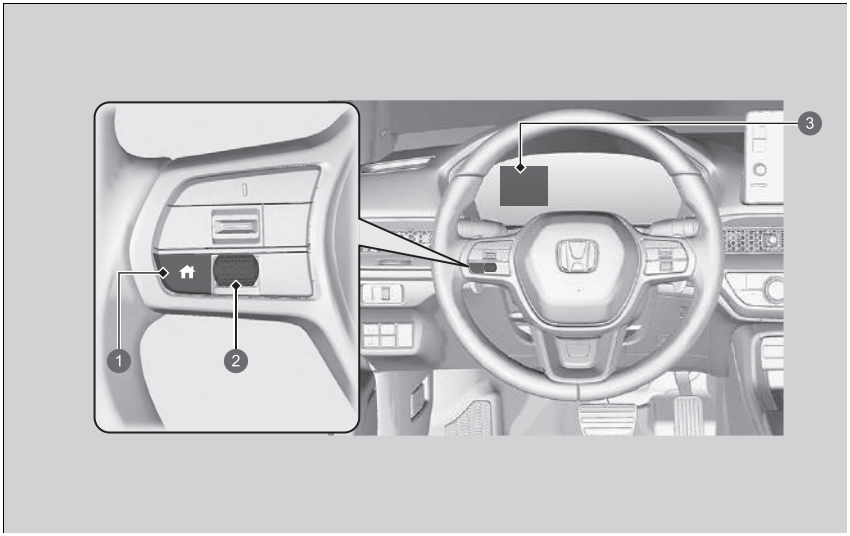
❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
❺ Back

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



1. (Home) Button
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. Driver Information Interface

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 155

❶ Level

If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

Continued

If the number of bars drops to one, a beep will sound, the steering wheel will vibrate, and the coffee cup will turn to amber to warn the driver that he or she needs a break as his or her attention level is too low.
If the coffee cup lights up in amber, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The amber coffee cup warning will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the coffee cup will light up in amber again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The warning does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**
- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**
- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**
- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 505
- The condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert only** or **OFF**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Continued

Seat Belts

Appears, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➔ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 49

Maintenance

Show the service reminder system.

➔ **Service Reminder System*** P. 580

* Not available on all models

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS and blind spot information system, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❶ Area Info for CMBS
❷ Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
❸ Area Info for Bind Spot Information System
❹ Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
❺ Bind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info
❻ CMBS Icon and Status Info

Continued

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 531
➔ **CMBS On and Off** P. 476
➔ **Blind Spot Information System On and Off** P. 463

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.
➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 132
➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 132
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 132
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 132
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator** P. 132
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 133
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 135

No Content

➔ **POWER Gauge** P. 151
➔ **CHARGE/DECEL Gauge** P. 151

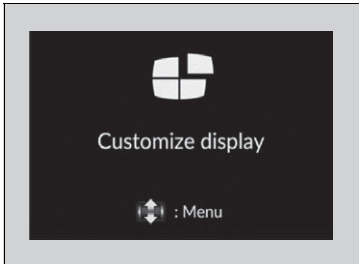
Speed/Distance Units

Enables you to show another unit on the driver information interface and audio/information screen and set the displayed measurements to read in either km and km/h or miles and mph.

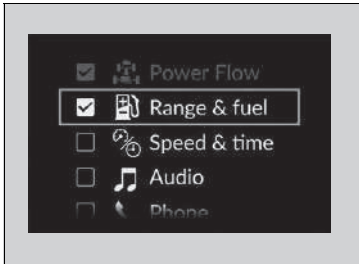
Press and hold the left selector wheel when you select **No content** on the driver information interface. Each time you do this, the unit will change from **km**, **km/h** to **miles**, **mph** or vice versa. After this, a confirmation screen will appear for a few seconds.

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize display**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 136

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Information

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type-Meter)

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292
➡ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 365

■ Clock

Shows the clock.

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock and 24 hour clock.

➡ **Clock** P. 194

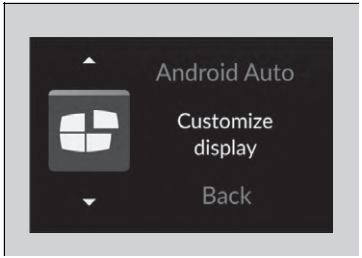
You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

➡ **Customize Display** P. 190

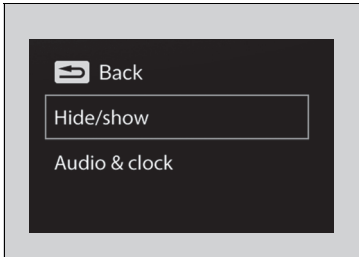
Customize Display

Arrange audio source on the left side area

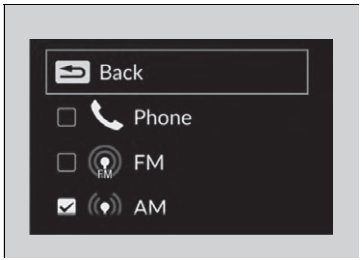
You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

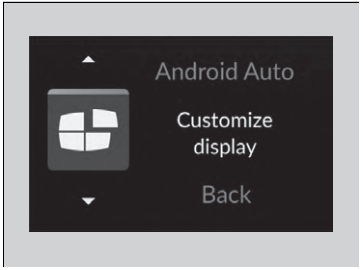
Continued

Customize Display

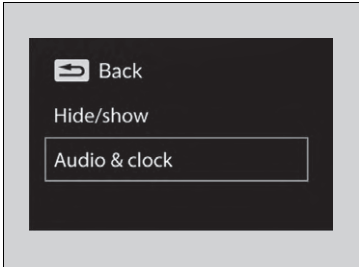
When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ Turn the displaying on the left side area on and off

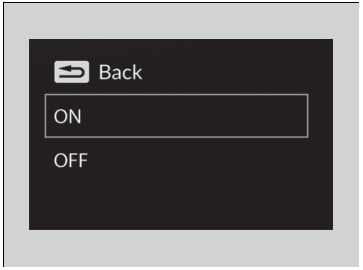
You can select whether the current audio information and clock appear on the left side area.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Audio & clock**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer and have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low**, **Engine temperature too hot** or **Reduced stopping power** message is displayed.

➡ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 678
➡ **Overheating** P. 676
➡ **If the Reduced Stopping Power Warning Appears** P. 679

■ Switching the Display

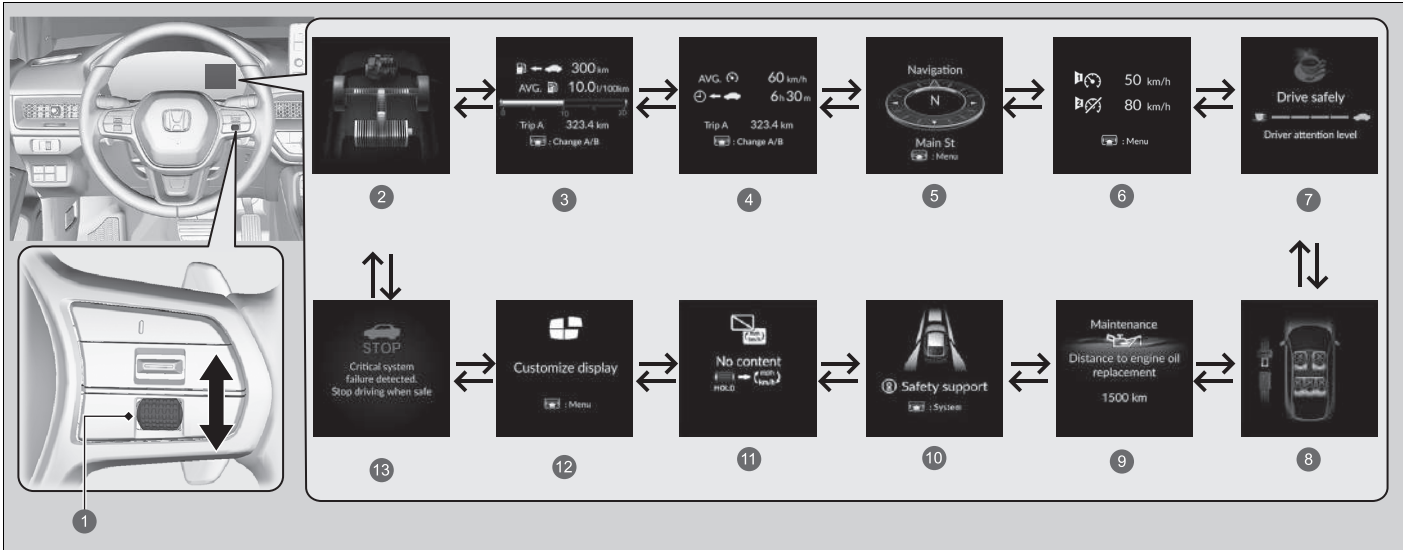
Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➡ **Customize Display** P. 190

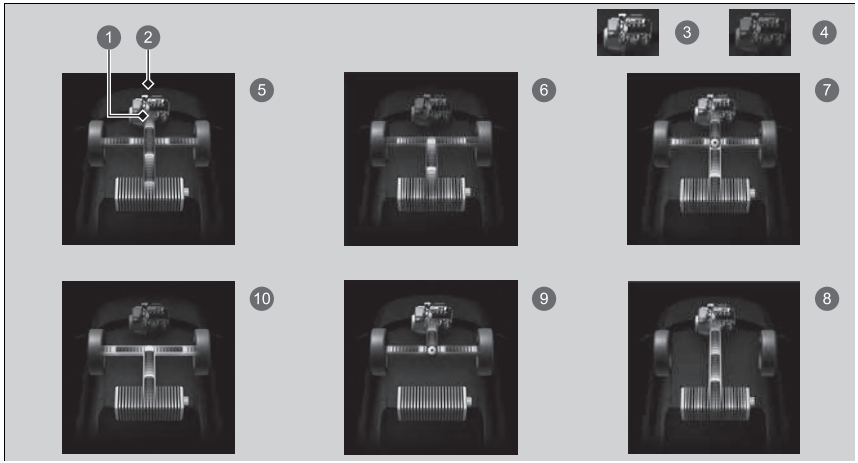
Continued



1. Right Selector Wheel
2. Power Flow P. 177
3. Range/Fuel/Trip Meter P. 178
4. Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 180
5. Navigation/Compass P. 181
6. Speed Alarm P. 182
7. Driver Attention Monitor P. 183
8. Seat Belts P. 187
9. Maintenance P. 187
10. Safety Support P. 188
11. No Content/Unit Change P. 189
12. Customize Display P. 190
13. Warning Message P. 191

Power Flow Monitor

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.

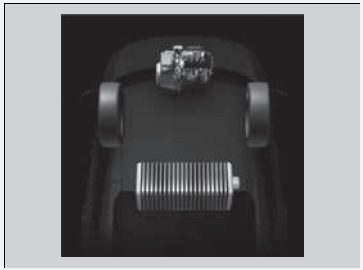


1. Power Flow
2. Engine
3. Engine ON
4. Engine OFF
5. **Hybrid (HV)**: Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.
6. **Electric Vehicle (EV)**: Power is supplied by the motor.
7. **Engine (Direct Drive)**: The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
8. The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
9. Power is being supplied by the engine only.
10. **Regeneration**: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

Continued

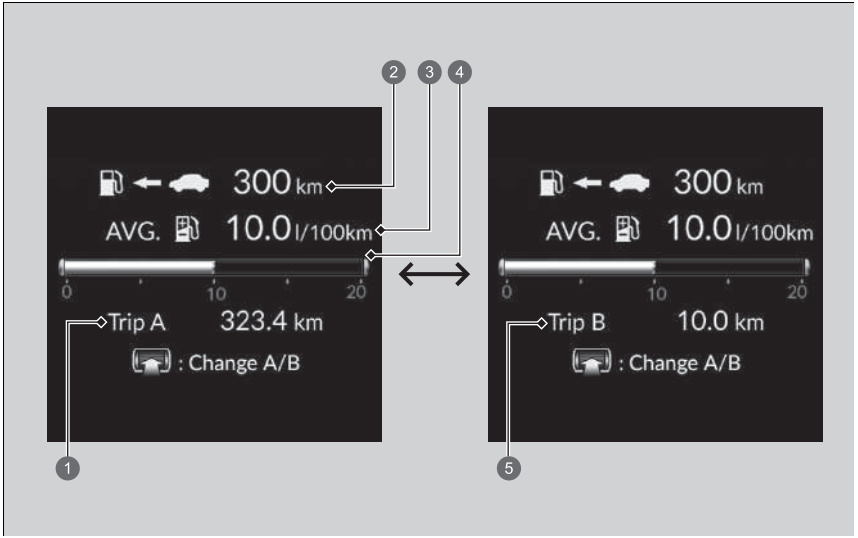
Power Flow Monitor

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Range
3. Average Fuel Economy
4. Instant Fuel Economy
5. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or mpg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or mpg.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Continued

Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

1. Trip Meter A
2. Average Speed
3. Elapsed Time
4. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

➔ **Trip meter** P. 179

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Navigation

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➔ **Android Auto™** P. 341
➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 337

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

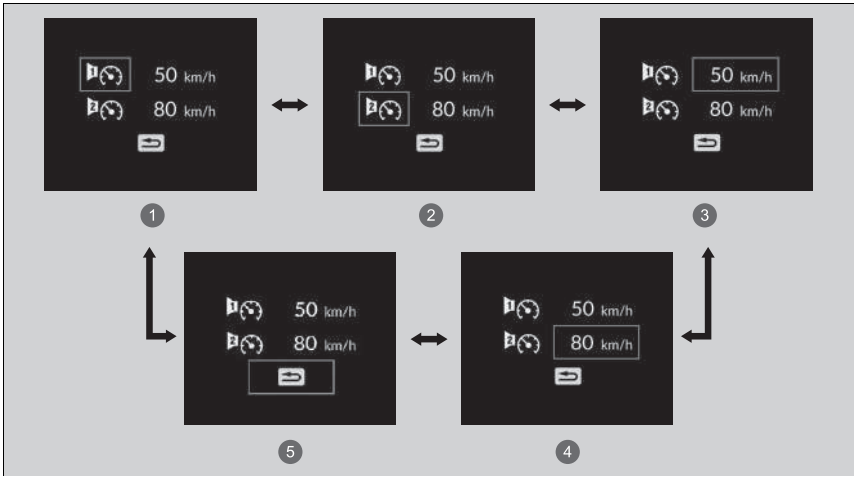
When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by pressing the right selector wheel.
➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Continued

Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Press the right selector wheel to display the setting screen, then roll it, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:

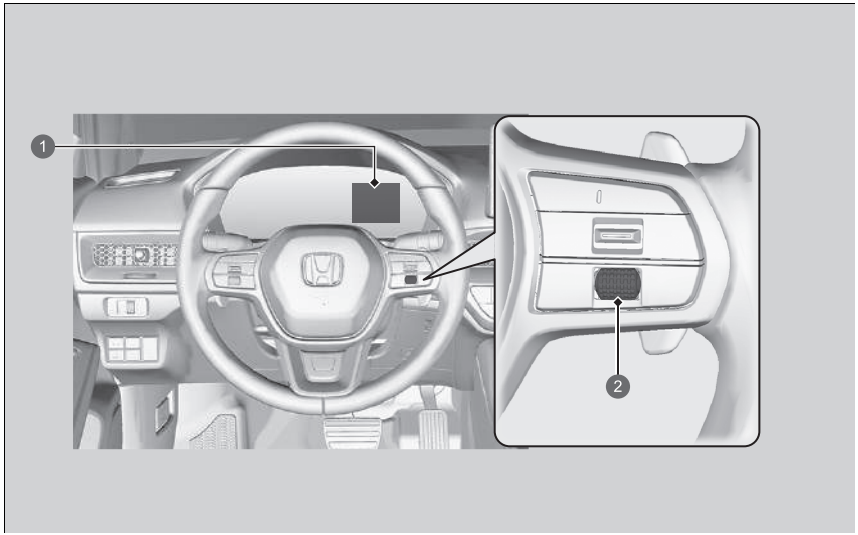


1. Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
2. Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
3. Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
4. Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
5. Back

*1:Default Setting

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



1. Driver Information Interface
2. Right Selector Wheel

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

Continued

When you select Driver Attention Monitor on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 175

1 Level

If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

If the number of bars drops to one, a beep will sound, the steering wheel will vibrate, and the coffee cup will turn to amber to warn the driver that he or she needs a break as his or her attention level is too low.
If the coffee cup lights up in amber, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The amber coffee cup warning will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the coffee cup will light up in amber again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The warning does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

Continued

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:

- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 505
- The condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ Customizing

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert only**, or **OFF**.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Seat Belts

Appears, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 49

Maintenance

Show the service reminder system.

➡ **Service Reminder System*** P. 580

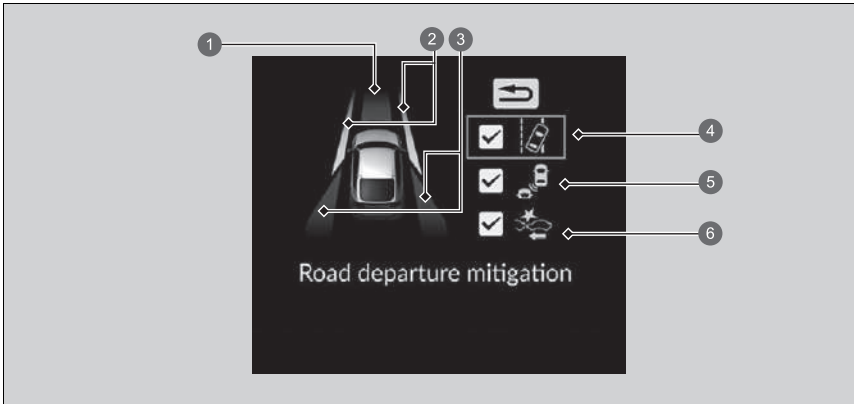
* Not available on all models

Continued

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS and blind spot information system, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



1. Area Info for CMBS
2. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
3. Area Info for Bind Spot Information System
4. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
5. Bind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info
6. CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 531
- **CMBS On and Off** P. 476
- **Blind Spot Information System On and Off** P. 463

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 132
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 132
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 132
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 132
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator** P. 132
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 133
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 135

Speed/Distance Units

Enables you to show another unit on the driver information interface and set the displayed measurements to read in either km and km/h or miles and mph.

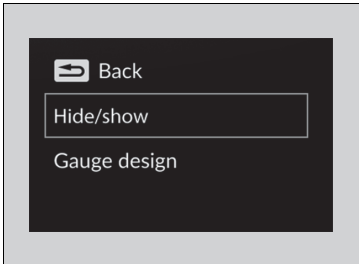
Press and hold the right selector wheel when you select the **No content** screen on the driver information interface. Each time you do this, the unit will change from km and km/h to miles and mph or vice versa. After this, a confirmation screen will appear for a few seconds.

Continued

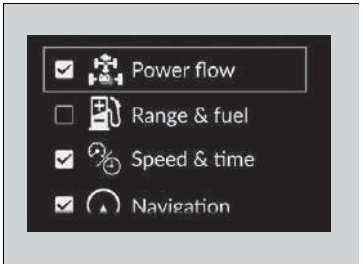
Customize Display

Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

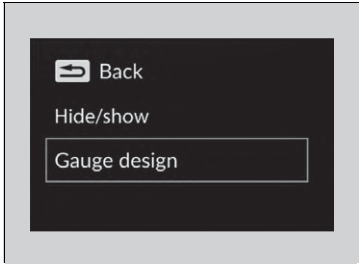
Arrange content on the right side area

Contents that are grey cannot be removed from the right side area.

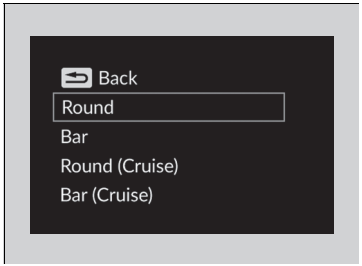
When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design to a round or bar design.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

Change gauge design

When using the **Round (Cruise)** or **Bar (Cruise)** gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

■ Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

➔ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 136

Warnings

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.

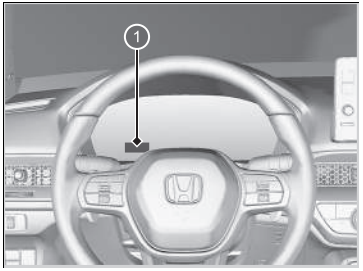
Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock 194
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 195
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 197
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 198
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 204
Childproof Door Locks 206
Hatch 207
Security System 210
Windows 217
Panoramic Roof* 220
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
POWER Button..... 224
Lights..... 226
Wipers and Washers 240
Models with A-type meter
Brightness Control 243
Models with B-type meter
Brightness Control 244
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button..... 245
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 246
Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 247
Power Door Mirrors 249
Seats 250
Interior Convenience Items
Interior Lights 261
Storage Items 263
Other Interior Convenience Items..... 272
Climate Control System 278

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock



1 Clock

You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock on the by using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 348

Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.

Key

This vehicle comes with the following key:

Keyless Remote

Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 210

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

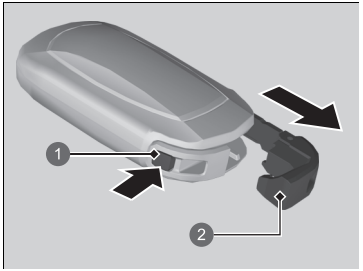
- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Continued

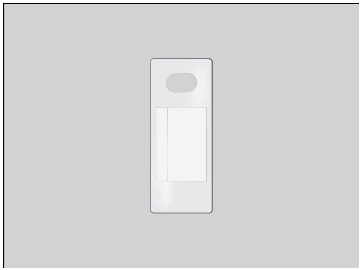
Built-in Key



1 Release Button
2 Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.
To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, lock and unlock all the doors, hatch and fuel fill door.

In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors, hatch and fuel fill door may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

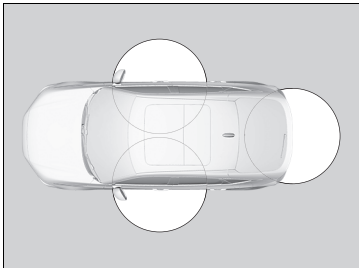
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door and hatch. You can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door and hatch within a radius of about 80 cm (32 inches) of the outside door handle or hatch release button.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and hatch.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors and hatch relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 261

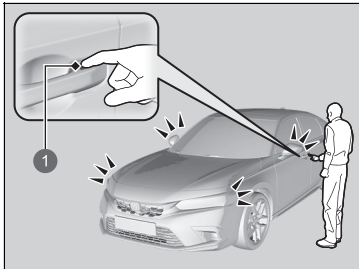
Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

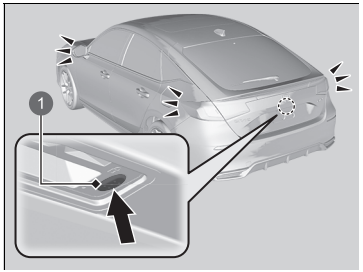
You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

■ Locking the doors and hatch



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the hatch.

▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and hatch lock; and the security system sets.

Right-hand drive type

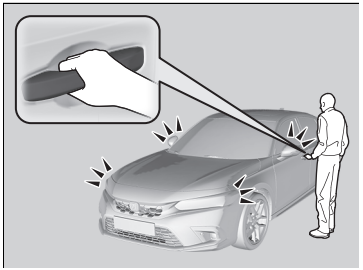
▶ The super locking function is activated.

Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking or locking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm (32 inches) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the hatch with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless access system may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

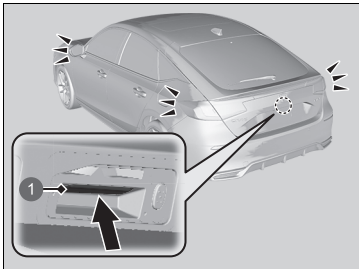
Continued

■ Unlocking the doors and hatch



Grab the driver's door handle:
- ▶ The driver's door and fuel fill door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:
- ▶ All doors and the hatch unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



Press and hold the hatch release button.
- ▶ The hatch unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

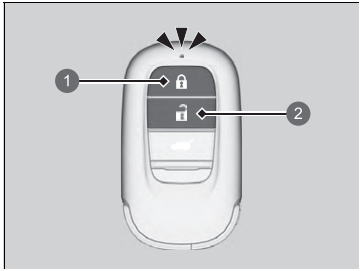
1 Hatch Release Button

Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

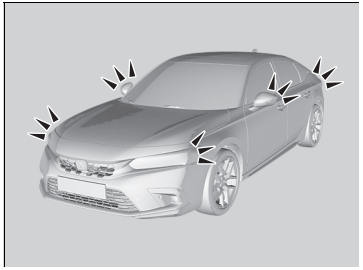
■ Locking the doors and hatch

Press the lock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Right-hand drive type

▶ The super locking function is activated.



■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door and fuel fill door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and hatch unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

Right-hand Drive Type

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the door handle or press the lock button on the hatch.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 629

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

Continued

■ Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead. The keyhole is on the back of the door handle.

Insert the key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.

Right-hand drive type

The super locking function is cancelled and then the driver's door is unlocked.

Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and the hatch.

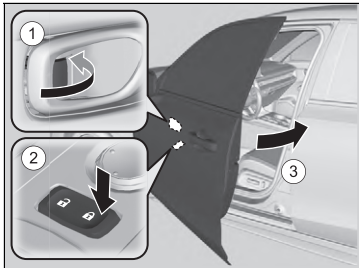
If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

It can be locked without using the remote transmitter.
➡ **Locking a Door Without Using a Key** P. 203

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

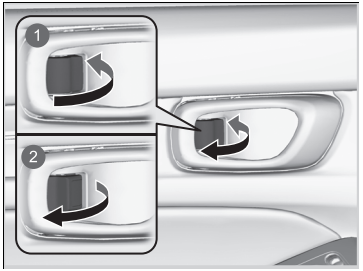
Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

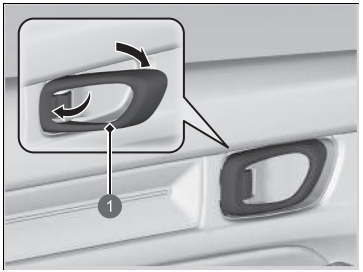
■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the hatch lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



❶ Inner Handle

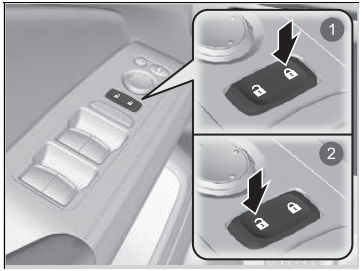
Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.
➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 206

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors, hatch and fuel fill door.

❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

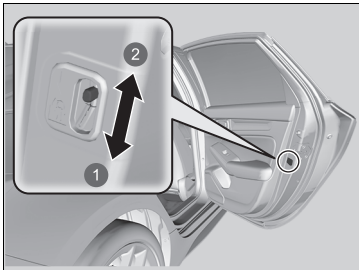
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors, hatch and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



❶ Lock
❷ Unlock

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

- Open the hatch all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the hatch may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:
▶ Avoid possible damage.
▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 109

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a hatch that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

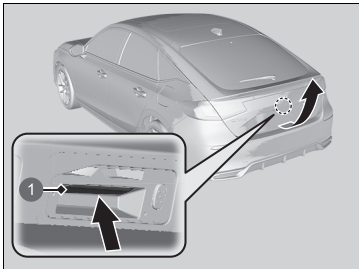
Make sure that all people are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the luggage area when closing the hatch.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

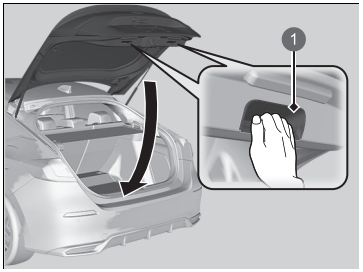
Opening/Closing the Hatch



❶ Hatch Release Button

When all the doors are unlocked or you press the hatch unlock button on the remote transmitter, the hatch is unlocked.
Press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the hatch before opening it.



❶ Inner Handle

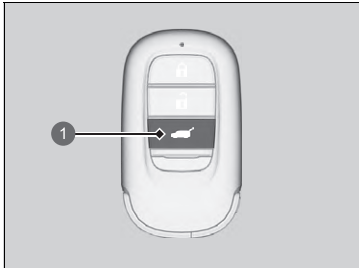
To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

If you close the hatch when the driver's door is locked, the hatch locks automatically.
▶ Some exterior lights flash three times.

Opening/Closing the Hatch

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the hatch. The beeper sounds and the hatch cannot be closed.

Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Hatch Unlock Button

Press the hatch unlock button to unlock the hatch.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you have unlocked and opened the hatch using the remote transmitter, when closing, the hatch locks automatically.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:
- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Right-hand Drive Type

Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the hatch or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the hatch are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Continued

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Security System Alarm

Right-hand Drive Type

The system may accidentally activate such as when:

- The vehicle is parked in an automated garage.
- The vehicle is being washed with highly pressurized water or being put through an automated car wash.
- The vehicle is being transported by train, ferry or trailer.
- The vehicle is subjected to heavy rain or stormy weather.
- Ice is being removed from the vehicle.

You can use ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button not to accidentally activate the security system alarm.

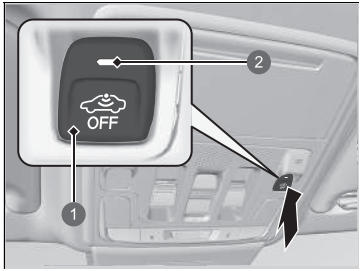
➡ **Ultrasonic Sensors*** P. 213

* Not available on all models

Ultrasonic Sensors*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm is set. If the sensors detect an intruder moving around inside or entering the interior of the vehicle through a window, the sensor will activate the alarm.

■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors



❶ Ultrasonic/Tilt Sensor **OFF** Button
❷ Indicator

You can set the security system without activating the ultrasonic sensor.
To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF by pressing the **POWER** button and then press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.
▶ The indicator is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.

Ultrasonic sensors are turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

Ultrasonic Sensors*

Whether the ultrasonic sensors have been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the indicator will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.
If, however, you turn the power system on, the indicator will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the ultrasonic sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the indicator will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.
If, however, you turn the power system on, the indicator will shut off.

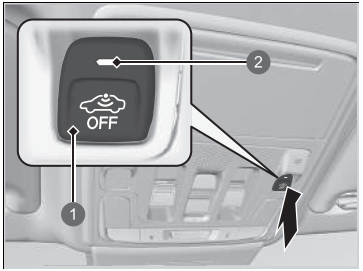
The security system may accidentally activate by ultrasonic sensors such as when:
- Someone is in the vehicle
- A window is open
- Accessories or clothes are hanging in the vehicle

* Not available on all models

Tilt Sensor*

The tilt sensor activates only when the security system alarm is set. If someone raises the vehicle in an attempt to tow the vehicle or remove the wheels etc., the sensor will activate the alarm.

■ To set the security system alarm without activating the tilt sensor



❶ Ultrasonic/Tilt Sensor **OFF** Button
❷ Indicator

You can set the security system without activating the tilt sensor.
To turn off the tilt sensor system, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF by pressing the **POWER** button and then press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.
▶ The indicator is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic/tilt sensor **OFF** button.
Tilt sensor is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

Tilt Sensor*

Whether the tilt sensor has been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the indicator will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.
If, however, you turn the power system on, the indicator will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the tilt sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the indicator will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.
If, however, you turn the power system on, the indicator will shut off.

Do not set the tilt sensor when the vehicle is lifted or jacked up.

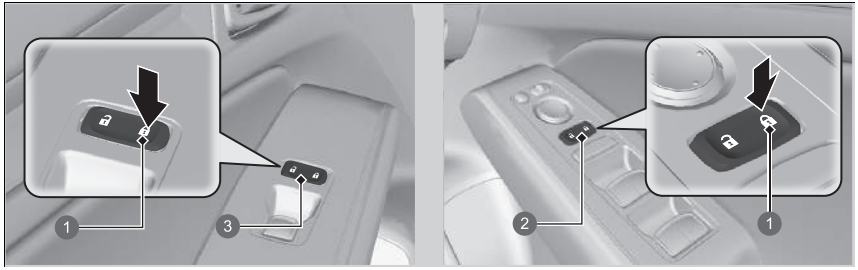
* Not available on all models

Super Locking*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors for better theft protection.
Doors cannot be opened from the inside once super locking has been enabled.

Locking the doors without super locking when using a master lock switch

1. Keep the driver's door closed.
2. Open the passenger door or rear door and push either the driver or passenger side master lock door switch in the lock direction.
3. Close the passenger door or rear door without touching the door handle.



1. To Lock
2. Driver's Door Master Door Lock Switch
3. Passenger's Door Master Door Lock Switch

Super Locking*

WARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Once the super locking function has been enabled, it will remain enabled even if you unlock the hatch.

* Not available on all models

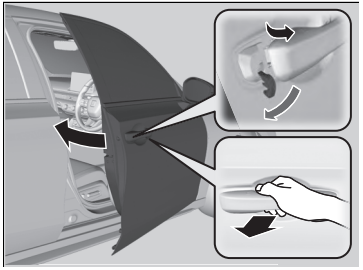
Continued

■ Locking the doors without super locking when using the built-in key

The built-in key can be used to lock the doors without activating super locking even if you are not carrying the keyless remote.

1. With the driver's door open, pull out the door handle and lock the door with the built-in key.

2. Take out the built-in key and close the door while still pulling on the door handle.



Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

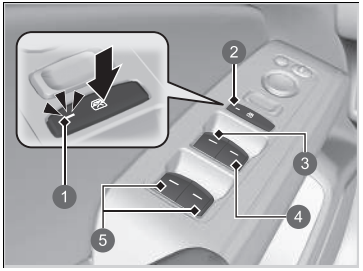
Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Continued

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



1. Indicator
2. Power Window Lock Button
3. Driver's Window Switch
4. Front Passenger's Window Switch
5. Rear Passenger's Window Switch

Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

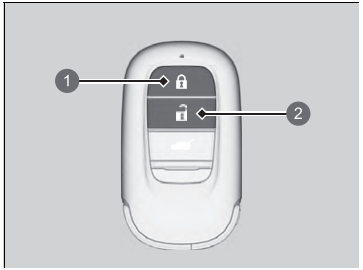
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverses direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the panoramic roof* will open/close automatically along with them.

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the remote transmitter setting using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof and sunshade when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof and sunshade.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof and sunshade on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof and sunshade before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to OFF.
Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

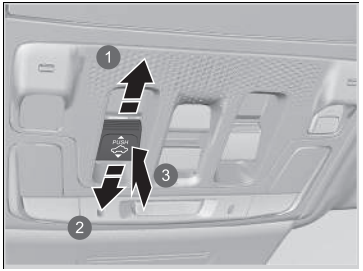
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You can use the remote transmitter to operate the panoramic roof.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote** P. 219

Continued

■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



❶ Open
❷ Close
❸ Tilt

■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

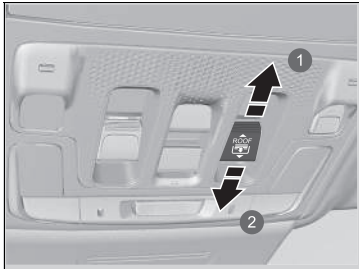
To tilt: Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch. The sunshades will open automatically and the panoramic roof will start to tilt up.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

■ Using the Sunshade Switch



❶ Open
❷ Close

■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Using the Sunshade Switch

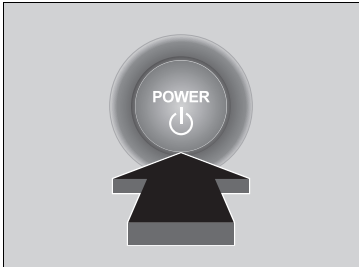
The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof opened, the sunshade stops slightly before the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

POWER Button

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

■ Keyless Remote Reminder

When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been started, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

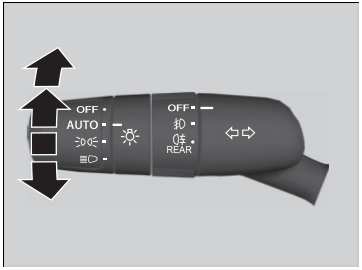
Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Lights

■ Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to [≣D].

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to [≣D◐≣].

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in [P] or the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is changed out of [P] and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➔ **Lights On Indicator** P. 122

The headlights are suitable for only left-hand or only right-hand drive. When driving on roads with different traffic rules, the headlight beam must be adjusted.

➔ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 467

Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear lisence plate lights will also switch on.

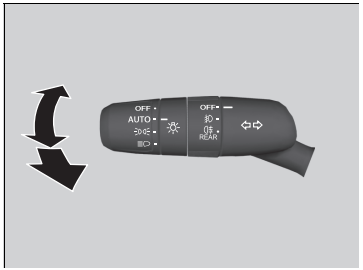
When the light switch is turned to [≣D◐≣] or [≣D] and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



■ Flashing the high beams

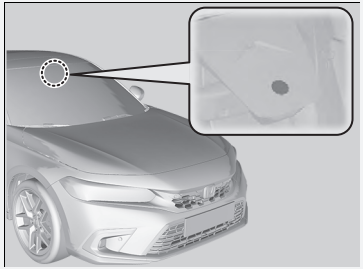
Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

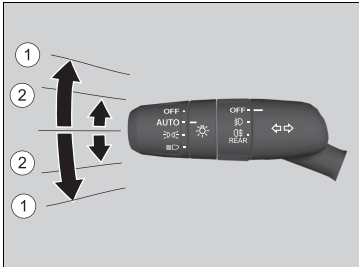
Continued

Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover the light sensor.



■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

➔ **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators** P. 122

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

However, when the switch is in the position lights remain on.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Continued

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Fog Lights

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

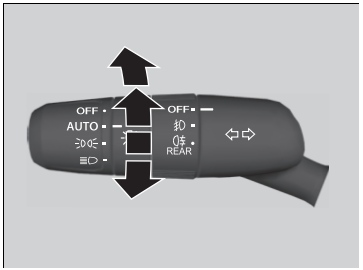
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights* are on.

■ Front and rear fog light switch*



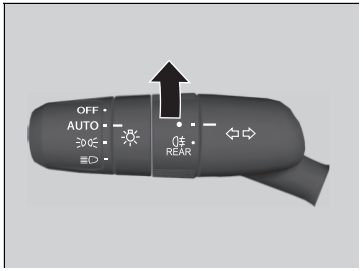
To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position. The indicator comes on.

To turn the front and rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position. The and indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position and then rotate the switch one position down from the position. The indicator stays on.
To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

* Not available on all models

■ Rear fog light switch*



To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to ⦶. The ⦶ indicator comes on.

■ Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

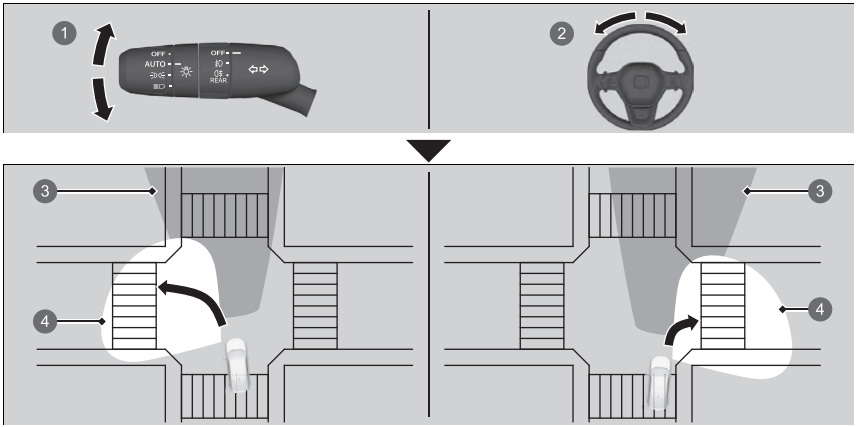
The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

* Not available on all models

Active Cornering Lights*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 40 km/h (25 mph), the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or put the transmission into R.

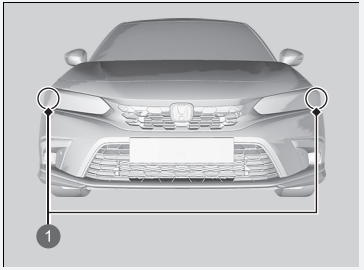
■ **The corner you are making a turn towards is illuminated when:**



❶ You operate the turn signal lever.
❷ You turn the steering wheel around 70 degrees or more.
❸ Headlight beam coverage
❹ Cornering light beam coverage

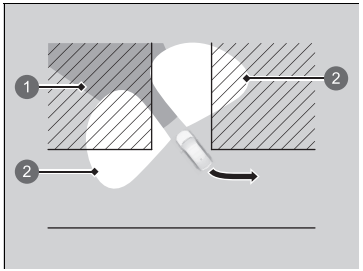
Active Cornering Lights*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in R, move it to another position momentarily.



❶ Active Cornering Lights

* Not available on all models



❶ Headlight beam coverage
❷ Cornering light beam coverage

■ **Both front corners are illuminated when:**

You put the transmission into R.

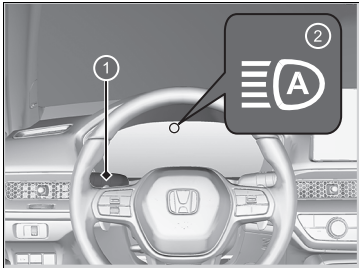
Auto High-Beam*

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and between the high beam and low beam switches automatically depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Light Switch
❷ Auto High-Beam Indicator

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can change the auto high-beam system on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25mph) or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	⬌	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h (15mph) or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

Continued

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

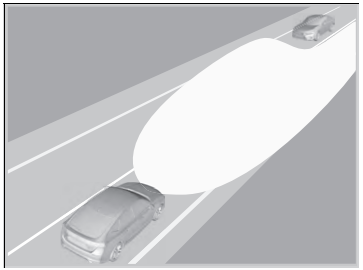
- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≡D.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Adaptive Driving Beam*



When driving at night, the front wide view camera detects light sources such as street lights or the lights of an oncoming or preceding vehicle. The system automatically switches the headlights between low and high beam depending on the situation.
In addition, the system automatically adjusts the light distribution of the high beams in order to reduce glare for preceding and oncoming vehicles.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

The adaptive driving beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

For the adaptive driving beam to work properly:
- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If you move the lever from the low beam position, the adaptive driving beam indicator will turn off.

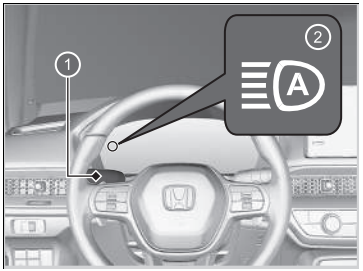
* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Use the Adaptive Driving Beam

Activating the system

The adaptive driving beam indicator comes on, and the system begins adjusting the light distribution of the high beams when all of the following conditions are met.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

1. Light Switch
2. Adaptive Driving Beam Indicator

If the adaptive driving beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

In the following cases, the adaptive driving beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The adaptive driving beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatically adjusting the light distribution

The system starts to automatically adjust the light distribution of the high beams once the vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25mph) or higher, and the light distribution changes depending on vehicle speed, or under the following conditions:

- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

If the vehicle speed slows to 24 km/h (15mph) or lower, the system stops automatically adjusting the light distribution and switches the headlights to low beam.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow the procedure below. Note that when you do this, the adaptive driving beam indicator will turn off and the adaptive driving beam will be deactivated.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≡D.

▶ To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

How to turn off the Adaptive Driving Beam System

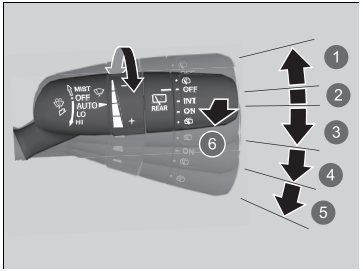
You can change the adaptive driving beam system on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



❶ **MIST**
❷ **OFF**
❸ **AUTO**
❹ **LO:** Low speed wipe
❺ **HI:** High speed wipe
❻ **Washer**

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE
Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

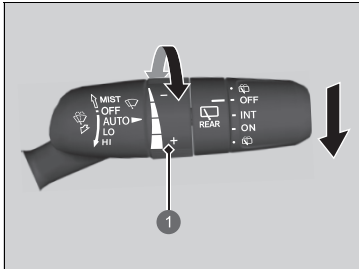
NOTICE
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

NOTICE
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the builtup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers



❶ Adjustment Ring
-: Low Sensitivity
+: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

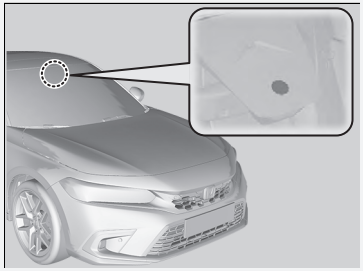
The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

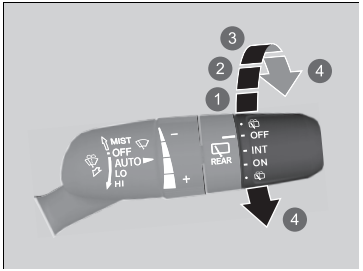


NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:
- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Continued

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ **OFF**
❷ **INT** (Intermittent)
❸ **ON** (Continuous wipe)
❹ **Washer**

The rear wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

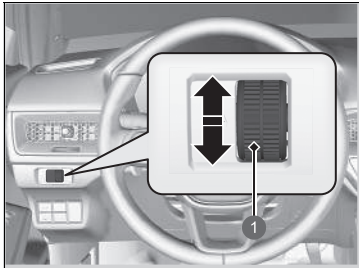
■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Windscreen Wiper Operation	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe High speed wipe	Continuous

Models with A-type meter

Brightness Control



❶ Control Dial

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the dial up.
Dim: Turn the dial down.

Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous display.

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

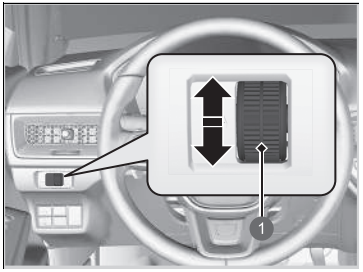
Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on and it is dark outside.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Models with B-type meter

Brightness Control



1 Control Dial

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

■ Adjusting the brightness manually

You can use the control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the dial up.
Dim: Turn the dial down.

▶ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

■ Brightness level indicator

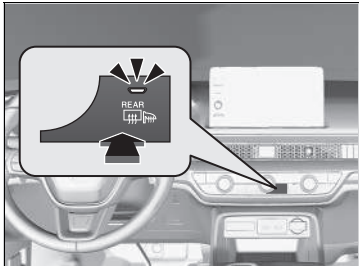
The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



The rear demister and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

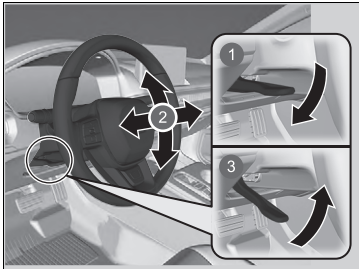
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.

2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*

Flip the tab to switch the position.The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

1 Daytime Position
2 Night Position

Mirrors

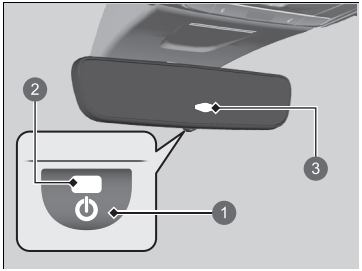
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
Front Seats P. 250

* Not available on all models

Continued

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirrors*



1. AUTO Button
2. AUTO Indicator
3. Sensor

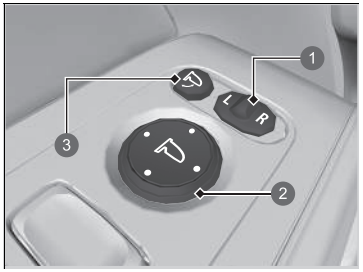
When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirrors*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



❶ Selector Switch
❷ Adjustment Switch
❸ Folding Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the hatch using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

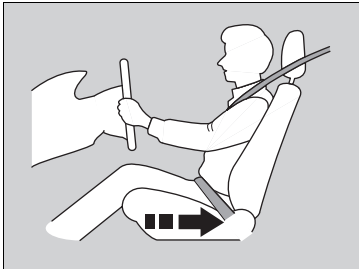
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Customized Features P. 348

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

WARNING

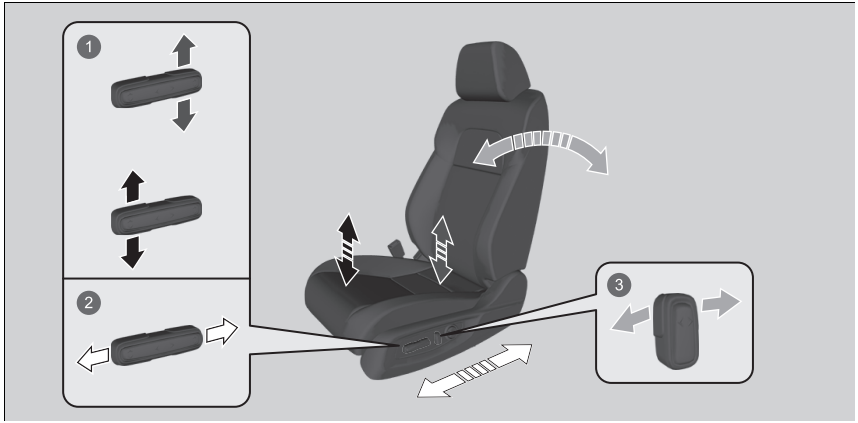
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

Adjusting the front power seats*

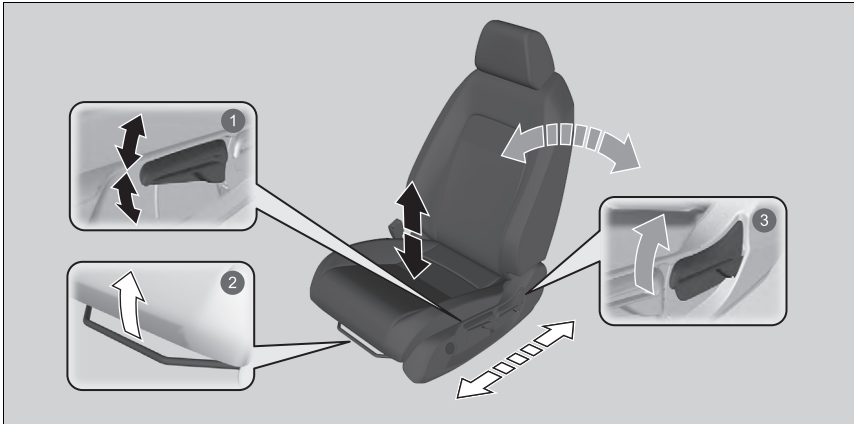


1. Height Adjustment (Driver's seat only)
2. Horizontal Position Adjustment
3. Seat-back Angle Adjustment

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Adjusting the front manual seats*



❶ **Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

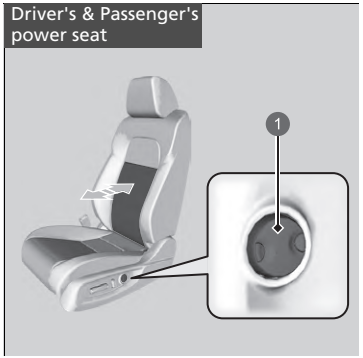
❷ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

❸ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

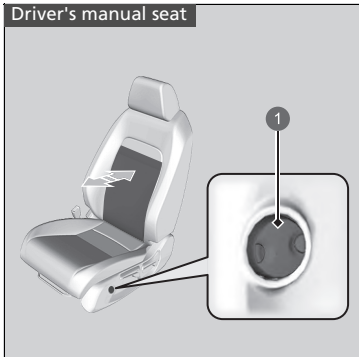
Adjusting the front manual seats*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models



❶ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch



❶ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

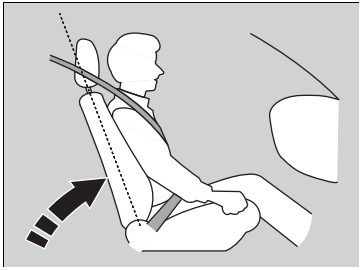
■ Lumbar support adjustment switch

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

Continued

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

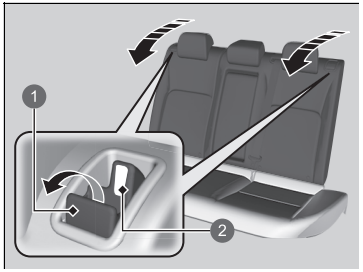
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

Separately fold down the left and right halves of the rear seat to make room for luggage.



1. Lower the head restraints to their lowest position.
2. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

❶ Release Lever
❷ Red Tab

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-back(s) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks, so that the red tabs in the release lever go down.
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back.

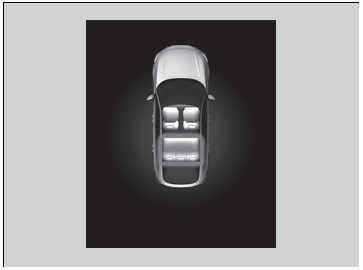
Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Continued

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder will go off and the function will terminate.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints*, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the power system off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

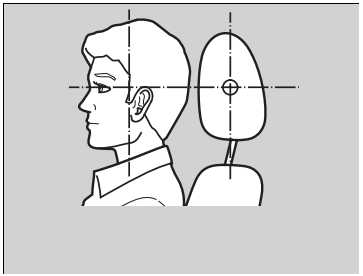
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

* Not available on all models

Head Restraints

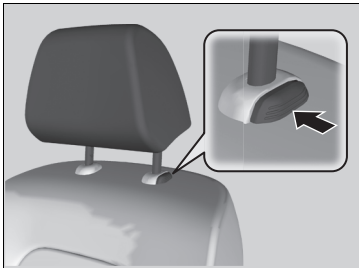
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Front head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Head Restraints

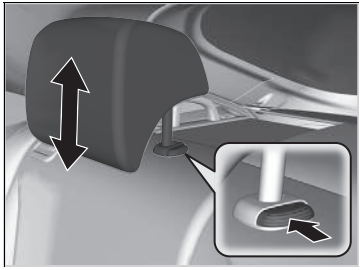
⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in a rear outer seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints

Front and rear outer head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints

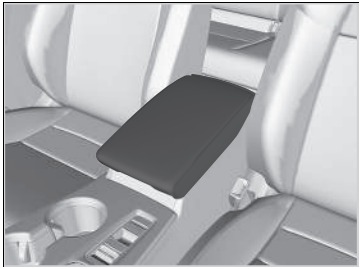
⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



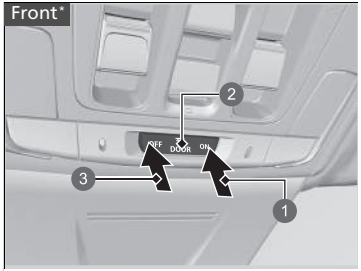
The console lid can be used as an armrest.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest

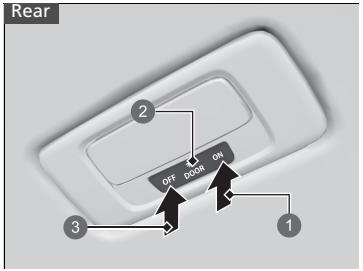
Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



1. On
2. Door Activated Position
3. Off



1. On
2. Door Activated Position
3. Off

ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior light dimming time.
Customized Features P. 348

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

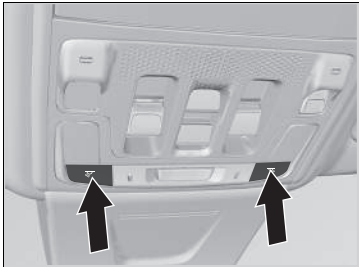
If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system off.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.

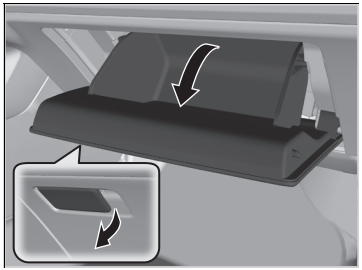
Map Light Switches

Models with panoramic roof

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the switches.

Storage Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Glove Box

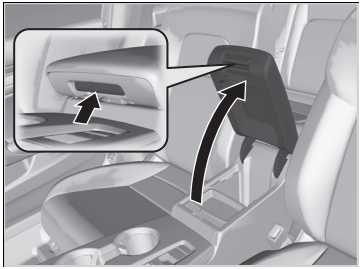
WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

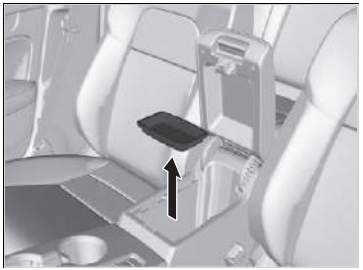
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

■ Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.



■ Removable tray

The tray in the console compartment is detachable. To remove the tray, simply pull it up.

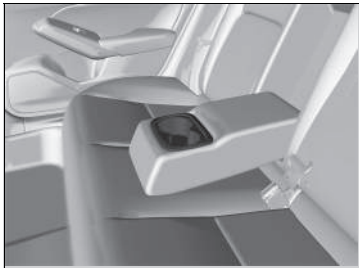
Beverage Holders

Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.



Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

Continued

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

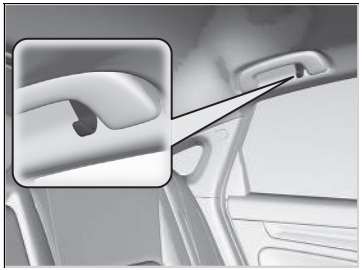
Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

■ **Rear door side beverage holders**

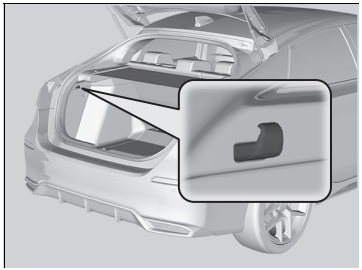
Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

Coat Hooks



There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles.

Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

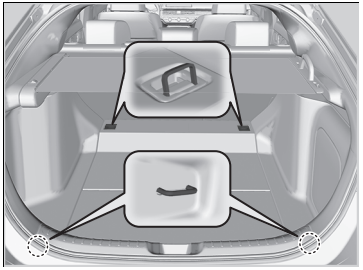
Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Continued

Tie-down Anchorages

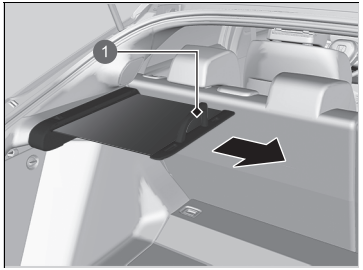


The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

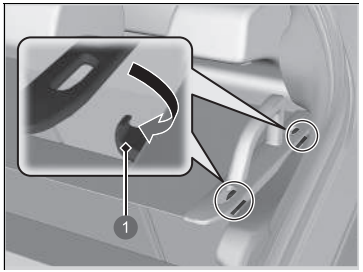
Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

■ Luggage Area Cover



❶ Handle



❶ Hooks

The luggage area cover can be used to cover the luggage space.

■ To pull out

Pull the cover handle straight out, and hang both ends on the hooks.

When storing, remove it from the hook and gently put it back.

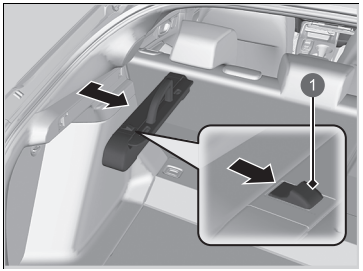
Luggage Area Cover

Do not access parcels in the luggage area while driving.
This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

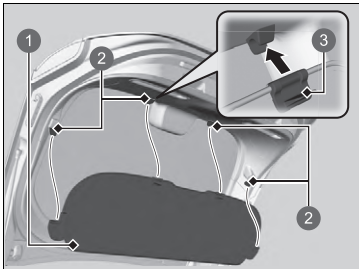
To prevent luggage area cover damage:
- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

Continued



❶ Lever

■ **To remove:**
Slide the lever on the luggage area cover case and remove it while pulling it towards you.



❶ Extension
❷ Clips
❸ Tab

■ **Luggage area cover extension**
The extension is attached at the back of the hatch by four clips. It extends the covering area when you close the hatch. To remove, unclip the extension from the hatch. When reinstalling the extension, make sure that the tabs come to the near side.

Sunglasses Holder*

To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

Sunglasses Holder*

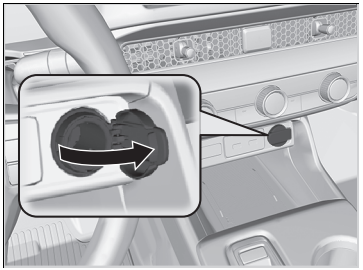
Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

* Not available on all models

Other Interior Convenience Items

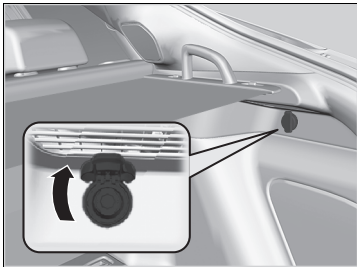
■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.



■ Luggage area

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Sockets

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

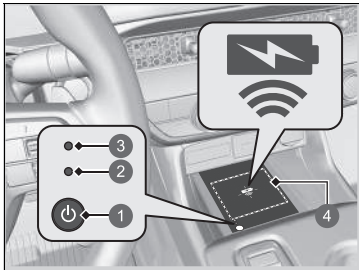
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent 12volt-battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



❶ (Power) Button
❷ Green Indicator
❸ Amber Indicator
❹ Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.

2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device and the amber indicator light will come on.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.

3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- **Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.**
- **Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.**
- **Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.**
- **Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.**
- **Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.**
- **Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.**

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger*

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

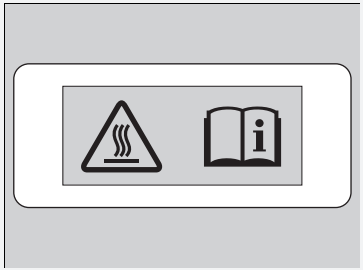
During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

* Not available on all models

Wireless Charger*

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the hatch are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.



Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Heated Steering Wheel*

The heated steering wheel can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the button on the lower side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Heated Steering Wheel*

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

* Not available on all models

Front Seat Heaters

The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

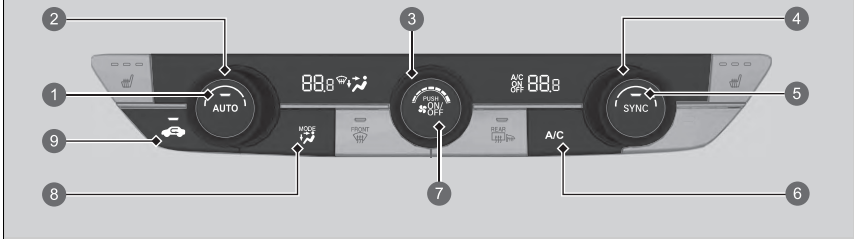
Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Left-hand Drive Type



1. **AUTO** Button
2. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. Fan Control Dial
4. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
5. **SYNC** Button
6. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
7. **ON/OFF** Button
8. MODE Control Dial
   - Dashboard vents
   - Dashboard and floor vents
   - Floor vents
   - Floor and windscreen demister vents
9. Recirculation Button

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The auto button indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

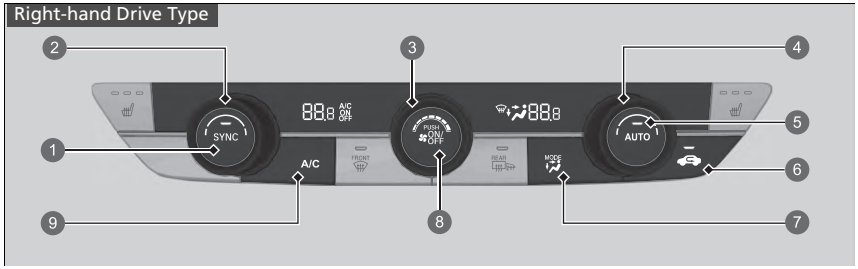
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.



1. **SYNC** Button
2. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. Fan Control Dial
4. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
5. **AUTO** Button
6. Recirculation Button
7. MODE Control Dial
   - Dashboard vents
   - Dashboard and floor vents
   - Floor vents
   - Floor and windscreen demister vents
8. **ON/OFF** Button
9. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

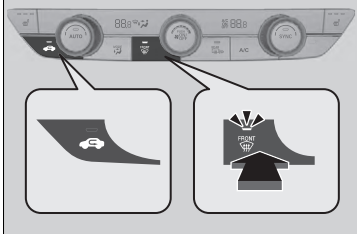
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

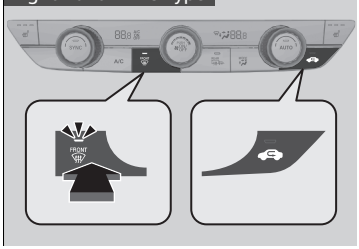
Continued

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Left-hand Drive Type



Right-hand Drive Type



Pressing the FRONT (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

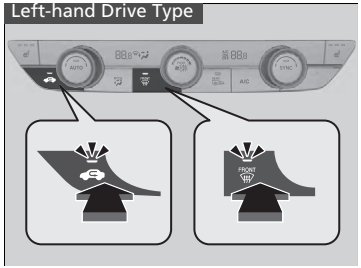
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

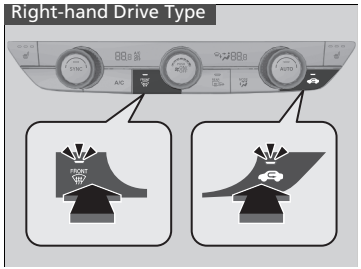
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

Left-hand Drive Type



Right-hand Drive Type



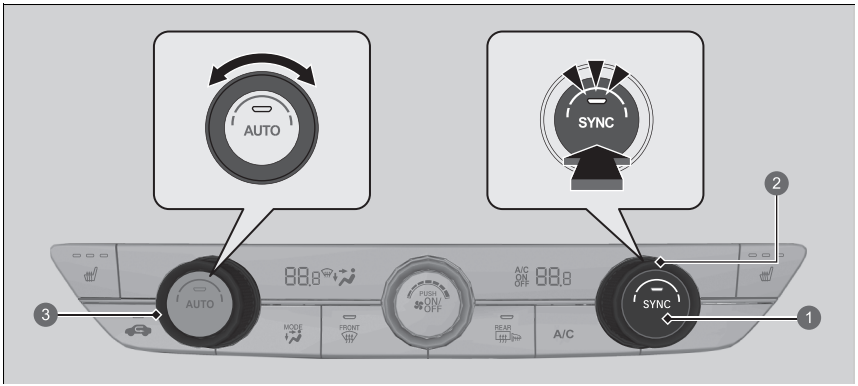
1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Continued

Synchronization Mode



❶ **SYNC** Button
❷ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

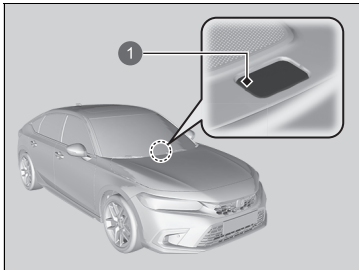
Press the **SYNC** button or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

Synchronization Mode

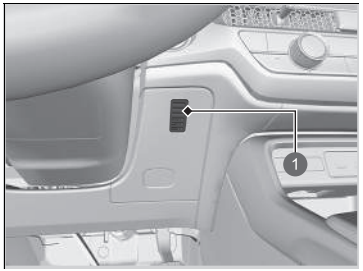
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



❶ Sensor



❶ Sensor

The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

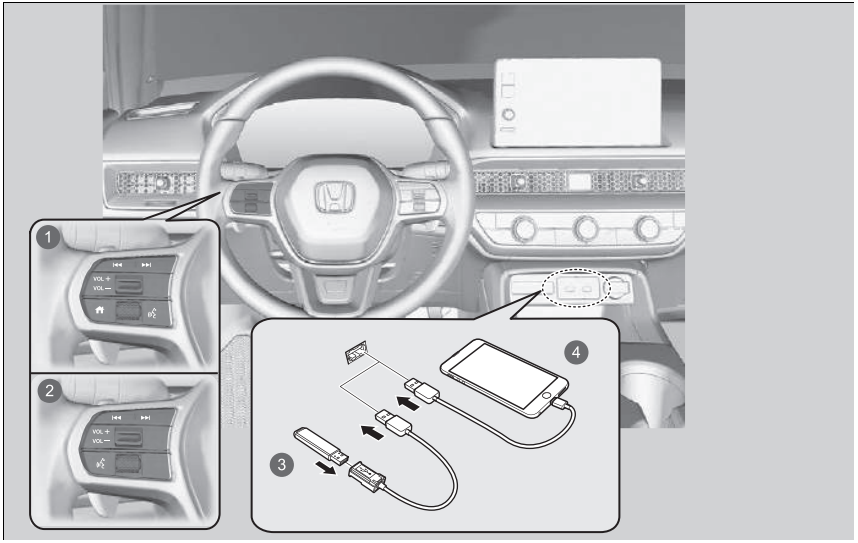
This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System 286
Display Audio 288
Audio Error Messages 383
General Information on the Audio System 384
Emergency Call (eCall) 394
Refuel Recommend 399

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.



❶ Remote Controls (Models with A-type meter)
❷ Remote Controls (Models with B-type meter)
❸ USB Flash Drive
❹ iPod

Audio System Theft Protection

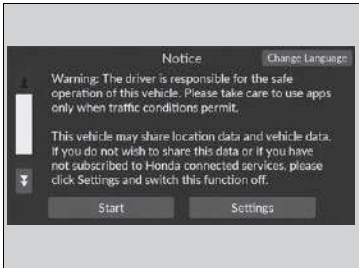
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the **VOL/ ⏻AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the data upload will be displayed.



Select **Start**.

- ▶ If you do not select **Start**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **Start** and the *Bluetooth®* pairing screen will be displayed.
- ▶ Except Turkish models
  If you want to change the settings for data upload, select **Settings**, then select the ON/OFF settings on the **Location and vehicle data sharing** screen.

■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
   - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

Start Up

Except Turkish models

Location and vehicle data sharing

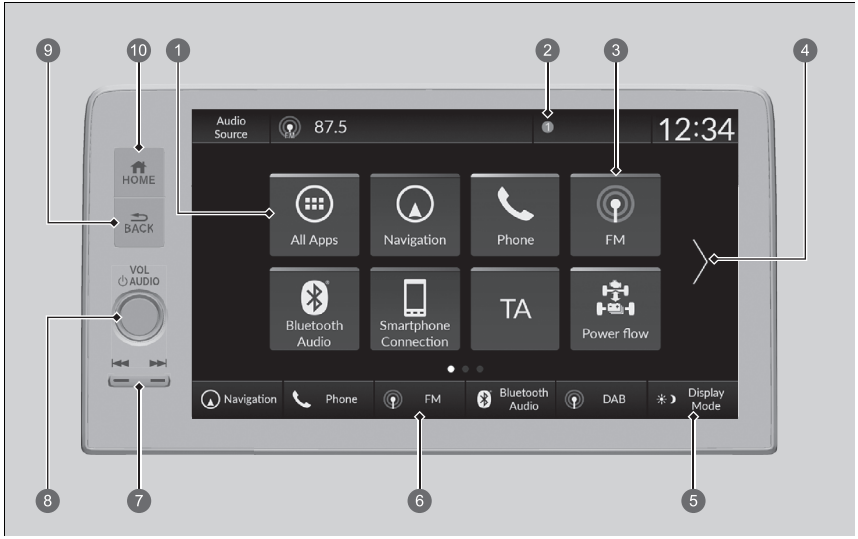
ON: Available the data communication.

OFF: Not available the data communication.

Basic Operation

Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ **Display Mode** Icon
❻ Mode Change Switch Icons
❼ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❽ **VOL/ ⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❾ BACK (Back) Button
❿ HOME (Home) Button

Continued

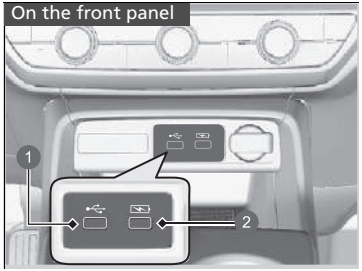
Audio System Function

This screen is shown for the left-hand drive models. For the right-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

Key Off Operation
After you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), you can use the audio system for up to 30 minutes per driving cycle. However, whether you can continue using the audio system depends on the battery condition. Repeatedly using this feature may drain the battery.

All Apps: Displays the all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment.
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
/ (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
(Back) Button: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.
(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.

USB Ports



❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones
❷ Only for charging devices

On the front panel ( )

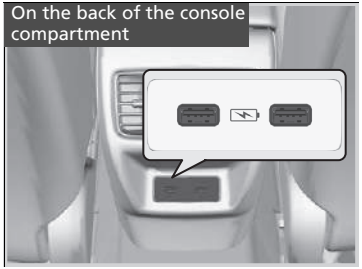
The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

On the front panel ( )

The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.



On the back of the console compartment

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

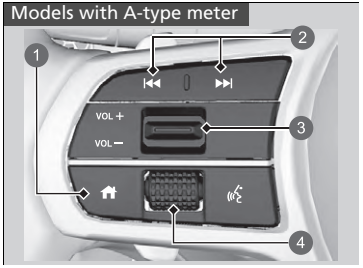
The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

Continued

Audio Remote Controls

Models with A-type meter



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

1. (Home) Button
2. / (Seek/Skip) Buttons
3. **VOL +/VOL −** (Volume) Switch
4. Left Selector Wheel

Audio Remote Controls

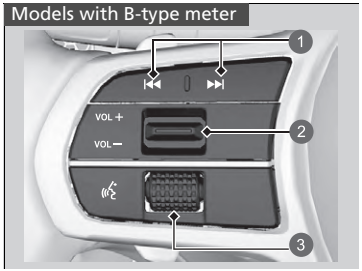
Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth®* device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Models with B-type meter



❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL +/VOL –** (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel

VOL +/VOL – (Volume) Switch
Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Continued

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

Roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

Models with A-type meter
FM/DAB/AM/USB/Bluetooth/Apps

Models with B-type meter
Back/Telephone/FM/AM/Traffic/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Customized
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.

On-Board Owner's Manual*

You can view the content of the owner's manual on the Display Audio.

■ Open the Owner's Manual

1. Select **All Apps**.
2. Select **Owner's Manual**.

■ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

When you can install or update the owner's manual, the notification will be sent automatically.

To update:
1. Tap the notification.
▶ The version screen will display.
2. Select items to be updated.
3. Tap **Update**.

If you unselect an item on the version screen, you will not receive any notifications for it.

On-Board Owner's Manual*

This function does not cover all languages available for the Display Audio.

Changing the language of the Display Audio will also change the language of the owner's manual. If the owner's manual is not available or installed in that language, the owner's manual will default to English.

Install/Update the Owner's Manual

There may be differences in the displayed content depending on the version of the owner's manual.

If the owner's manual is not installed yet, you can install it via Wi-Fi.
➡ **Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot** P. 336

For languages except English, Germany, French, Italian and Spanish

If you install the owner's manual in a new language, the owner's manual you previously downloaded will be removed.

* Not available on all models

Voice Control Operation*1

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.

The voice control system uses the (talk) button on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognises only certain commands.
  Available voice commands.
  Voice Portal Screen P. 298
- Close the windows and panoramic roof*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a clear, natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

*1: Languages that the voice control system recognises are English, German, French, Spanish, and Italian.

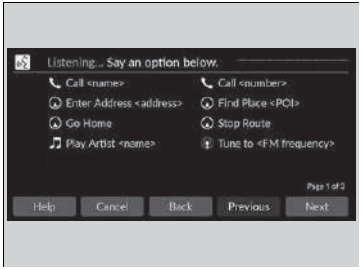
Voice Control Operation*1

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Voice Portal Screen



When the (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say *"Help"* after the beep.

Depending on the selected mode, the displayed commands are different on the voice portal screen. The commands recognised are the same regardless of which screen is selected.
Normal Mode: A list of example commands is displayed to quickly complete your desired function.
Assist Mode: A list of basic commands is displayed to guide you step by step through the voice menu.

You can change the mode on the **General Settings** screen.
➡ **Voice Control** P. 356

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognised.

General Commands

When the voice portal screen is displayed, it will change to the top screen of each function by using the global commands.
- *Music Search*
- *AM*
- *FM*
- *Navigation*
- *Phone*

Phone Commands

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognises the Phone command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

Phone Commands
- *Call <name>*
- *Call <number>*

The system recognises an only contact name in the stored phonebook of your phone. If full name is registered in first name field, the system will recognise the first name and last name as one contact name.

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

Audio Commands

When the system recognises the Audio command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

FM Commands
- *Tune to <FM frequency>*

AM Commands
- *Tune to <AM frequency>*

■ iPod Commands

- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Genre <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Genre <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ USB Commands

- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ Navigation Commands

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Standard Commands

- *Voice Help*
- *Cancel*
- *Back*

Voice Help are readout voice guidance for Help on current screen.

■ List Commands

- *Previous*
- *Next*
- *Yes*
- *No*

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

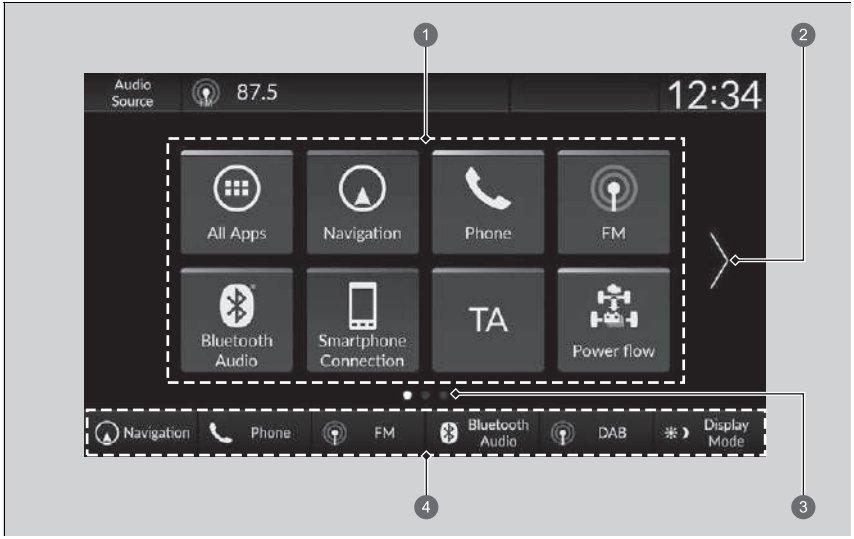
Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ App Shortcut Function



❶ App Shortcut Icons
❷ Arrow
❸ Page Indicator
❹ Mode Change Switches

■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Continued

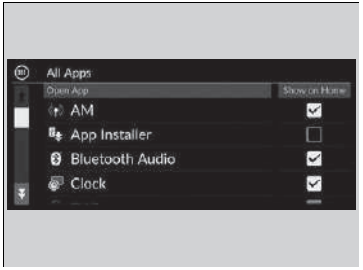
App Shortcut Function

The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 364

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 364

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

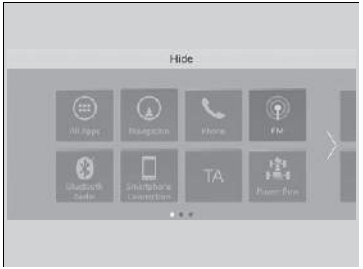
To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

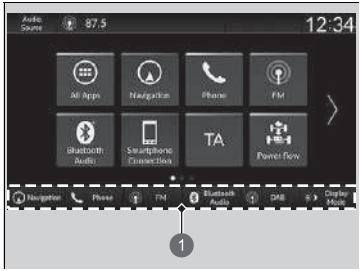
To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.



❶ Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.

1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

❶ System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source

Select **Audio Source** on the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

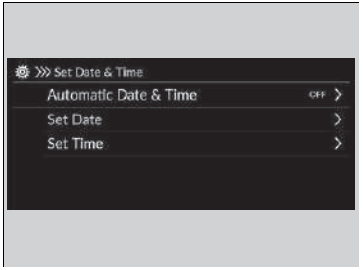
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:

7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:

7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

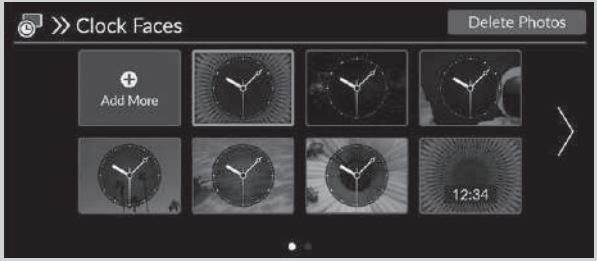
1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.

System P. 349

Features

Clock Wallpaper Setup



Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Ports P. 291
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Clock**.
   ▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Clock Faces**.
6. Select **Add More**.
   ▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.
7. Select a desired picture to import.
   ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
8. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
9. Select **Transfer**.
   ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Continued

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
  Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

■ Select clock wallpaper

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ Delete clock wallpaper

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound

1. Select an audio source.
2. Select **Sound**.
3. Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble**: Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader***1**/Audio Zones & Balance / Fader***2**: Balance, Fader, Audio Zones*
- **Bose Centerpoint***2**: Turns the Bose Centerpoint on and off.
- **Speed Volume Compensation***1**: Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation***2**: Sets the amount of volume increase.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Adjusting the Sound

The Speed Volume Compensation (SVC) adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader***1**, **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader***2**, **Bose Centerpoint***2**, **Speed Volume Compensation***1**, and **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation***2**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Select (Display Mode).

▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.

▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by swiping or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 306

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:

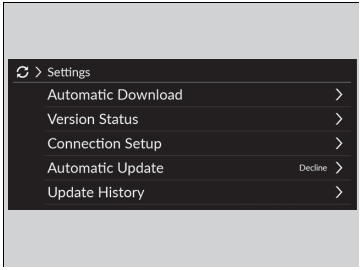
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

Continued

■ System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Automatic Update**
- **Update History**

■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Automatic Download**.

5. Select the access point, then select **Enable**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.

■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Version Status**.

■ Connection setup

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
▶ If the vehicle's Wi-Fi is turned off, select **OFF**.

■ Automatic update settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic update setting.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Automatic Update**.
5. Select **Accept**.
▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Decline**.

■ View the update history

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Update History**.

Continued

How to Update Wirelessly

Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
   ▶ It will return to the network list.
8. Select an access point from the network list.
   ▶ If the audio system requires a password, enter a password.
9. Select **Connect**.

How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update with a USB Device

Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   ➡ **USB Ports** P. 291
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

Update the audio system

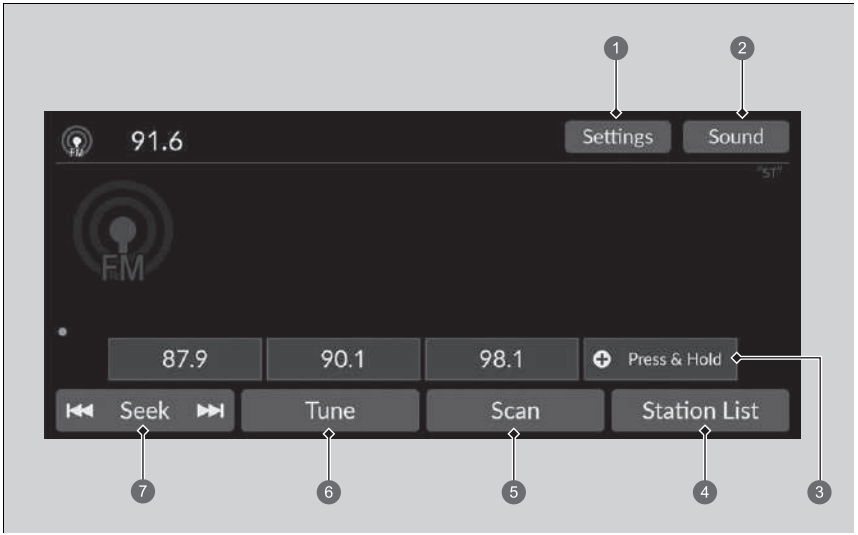
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   ➡ **USB Ports** P. 291
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A FAT32-formatted USB device between 8GB and 32GB in size with at least 8GB of free space is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Playing FM/AM Radio



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Station List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Tune Icon**
7. **Seek Icon**

Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Continued

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select ♫ (audio) on the left selector wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

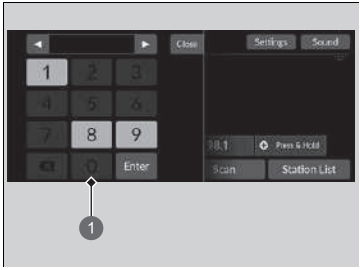
■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 311

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

❶ On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

You can tune the range of FM frequency between 87.5 to 108.0MHz.

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Continued

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

■ Settings

Changes the RDS settings.

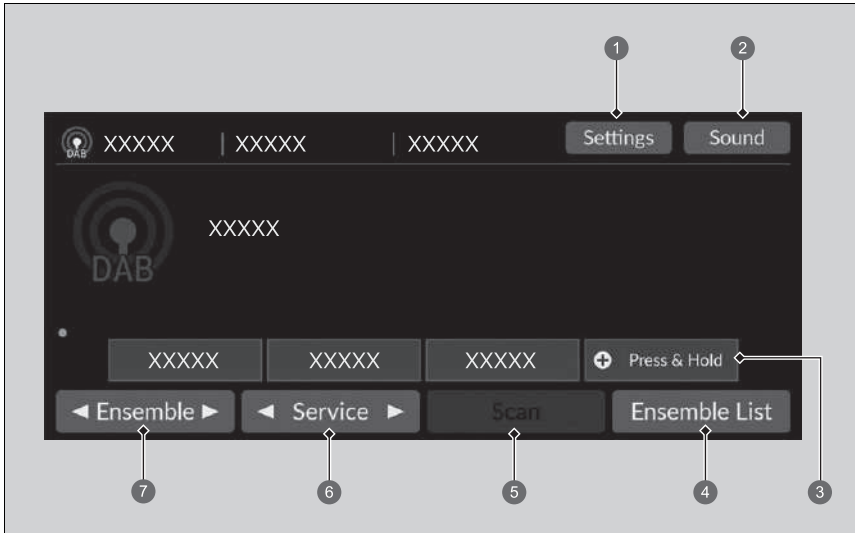
1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON/OFF***1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON/OFF***1)

*1: Default Setting

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Ensemble List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Service Icons**
7. **Ensemble Icons**

Continued

Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.
To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.
1. Select ◀ to ▶ the tune ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

Service

Tunes the service component.
To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select ♫ (audio) on the left selector wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 311

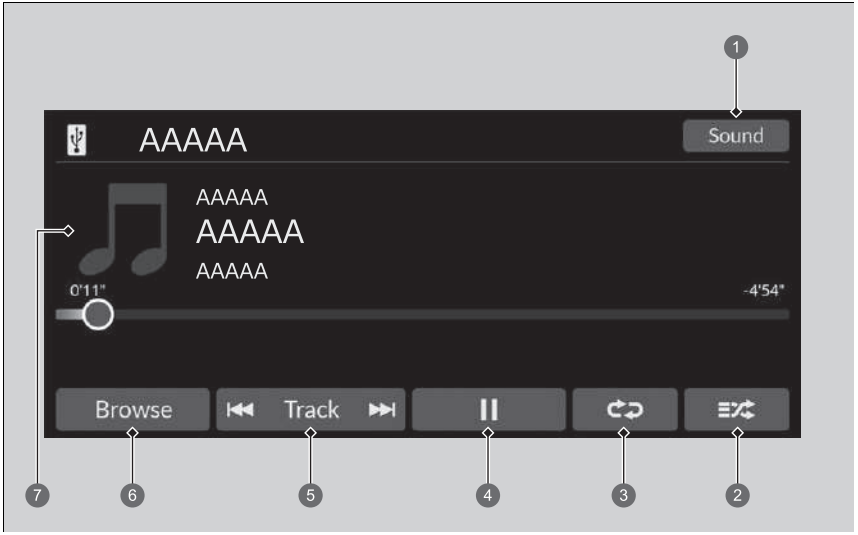
Settings

Changes the DAB settings.
1. Settings.
2. Select the option you want to change.

Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 291



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 383

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

Continued

How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Sound

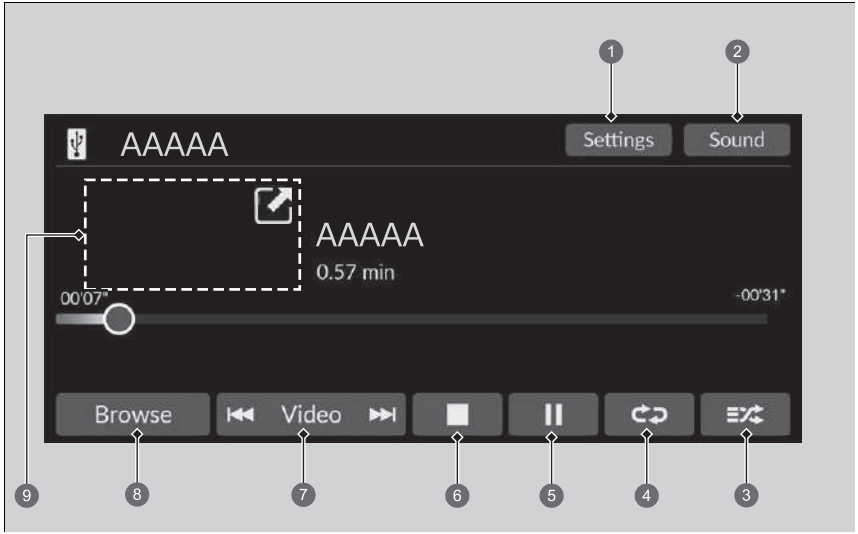
You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 311

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 291



1. **Settings Icon***
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Random Icon**
4. **Repeat Icon**
5. **Play/Pause Icon**
6. **Stop Icon***
7. **Track*/Video* Icons**
8. **Browse Icon**
9. **Cover Art*** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player*** (Playing a video)

Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 384

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 383

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

When playing a video file*

(stop): Select to stop a file.

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

How to Change a File

Track*/Video* Icons

You can select or to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 311

Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

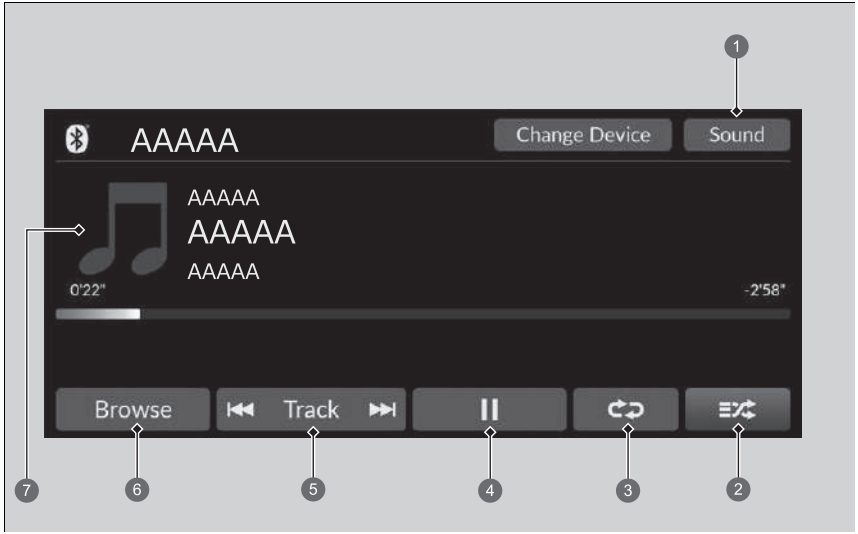
- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal***1**/Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right***1**/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Continued

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting the audio mode.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

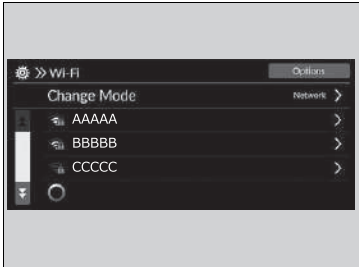
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 311

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

- Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

■ Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
   - ▶ If the data sharing settings is to **OFF**, the message will be displayed on the screen. You need to change to **ON**.
     System P. 349
   - ▶ If you want to turn off the Wi-Fi mode, select **OFF**.
8. Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
   - ▶ To add a new network or select the saved networks, select **Options**.
   - ▶ If **Options** is selected, **Add Network** and **Saved Networks** can be registered.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

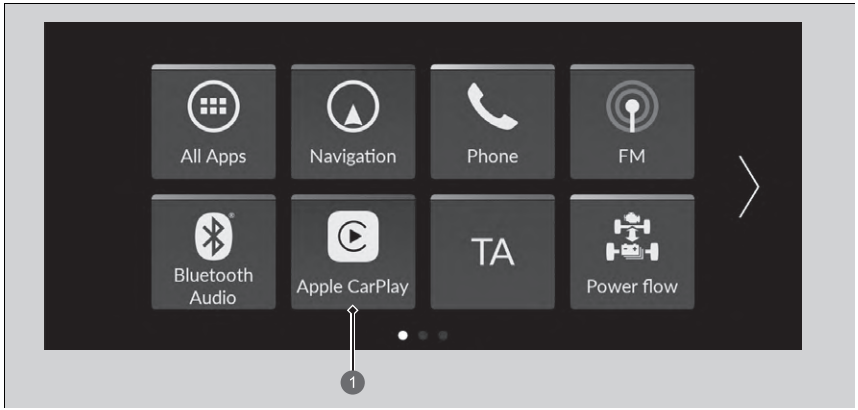
You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
Status Area P. 306

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 291



❶ **Apple CarPlay**

Apple CarPlay

We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

➡ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 339

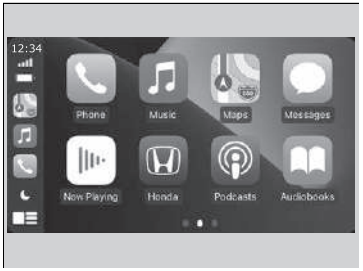
When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Continued

Apple CarPlay Menu



- **Phone**
  Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**
  Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
  Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.
-
  Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

Enabling Apple CarPlay

Connecting Apple CarPlay using the USB cable to the USB port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
   ➡ **USB Ports** P. 291
   ▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
   ▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly

1. Pair and connect the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
   ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372
2. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
   ▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
3. Select **Connect**.
   ▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Continued

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

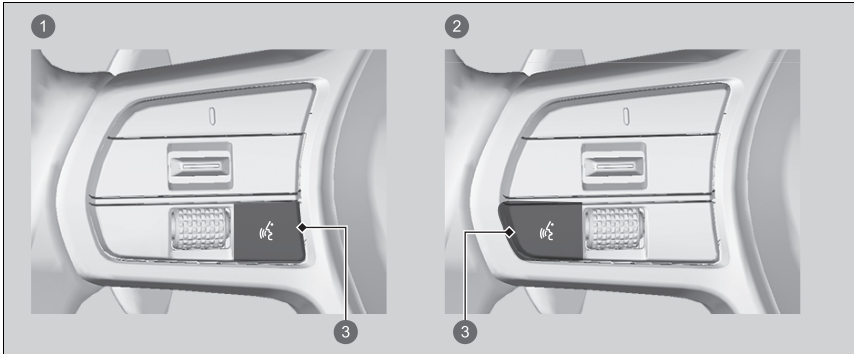
Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly

Wireless Apple CarPlay and Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Apple CarPlay and Hotspot at the same time, connect to Apple CarPlay with a USB cable.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.



1. Models with A-type meter
2. Models with B-type meter
3. (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

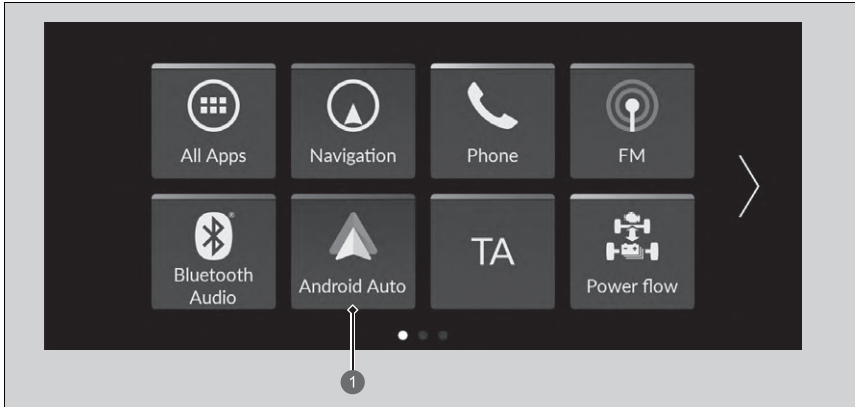
- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 291
➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 343



❶ **Android Auto**

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 291

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

Android Auto is a trademark of Google LLC.

Continued

Android Auto Menu

- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Honda**
-
  Operate Android Auto with your voice.
-
  You can check Android notifications.
- (Android Auto Home)
  Display useful information organised by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

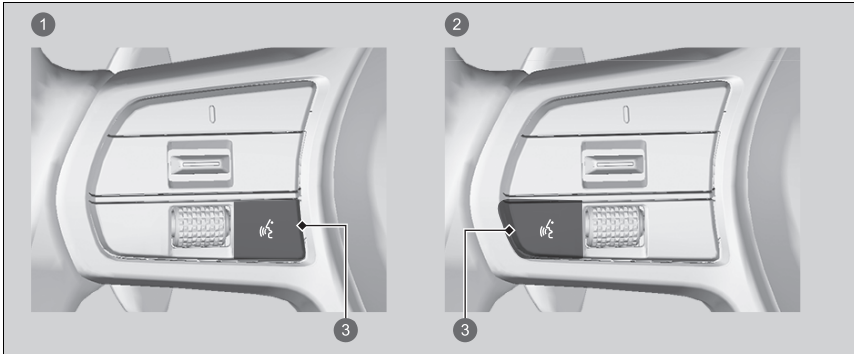
You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



1. Models with A-type meter
2. Models with B-type meter
3. (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

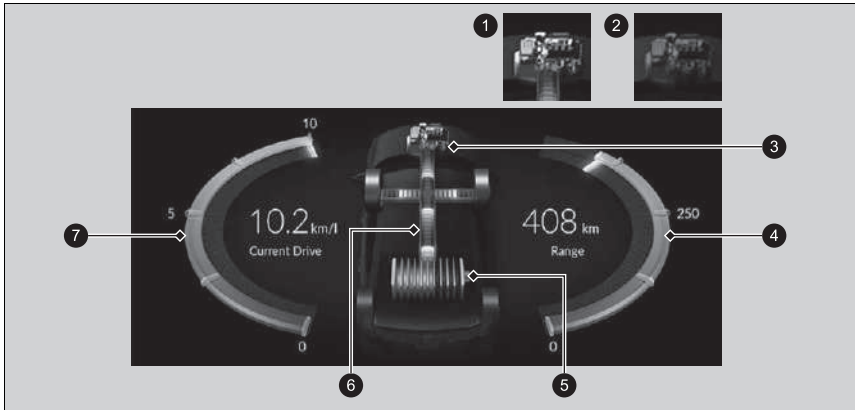
- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the icon in the lower-left corner of the screen.

Power Flow

The power flow screen shows the vehicle's power flow, average fuel economy, and range.



1. Engine ON
2. Engine OFF
3. Engine
4. Driving Range
5. High Voltage Battery Level Gauge
6. Power Flow
7. Average Fuel Economy (Current Drive)

Continued

Shows the power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

▶ The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.

Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery and the engine-driven generator.
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Blue and Green	Power is being supplied directly by the engine and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator.

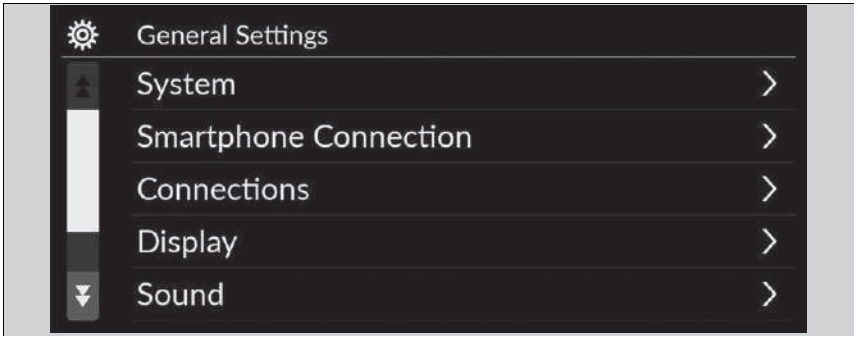
Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Green	The High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator.
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the engine-driven generator.
	Green	The High Voltage battery is being charged through regenerative braking.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** ➔ P. 349
- **Smartphone Connection** ➔ P. 351
- **Connections** ➔ P. 352
- **Display** ➔ P. 353
- **Sound** ➔ P. 355
- **Camera** ➔ P. 356
- **Voice Control** ➔ P. 356

Customized Features

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to P.

■ System

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Selects **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON***1/**OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 308	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 308	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON***1/**OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY***1/ **YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12-H***1/**24-H**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	**English**[*1]or **Turkish**[*1] See other selectable languages on the screen.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Normal**[*1]
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Location and vehicle data sharing*	**Location and vehicle data sharing**	Turns the data sharing setting on and off. ➡ **Start Up** P. 288	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Refuel Recommend		Turns the refuel recommend function on and off. ➡ **Refuel Recommend** P. 399	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 364	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ Smartphone Connection

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372	—
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372	—

Continued

■ Connections

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network/ Smartphone**[*2]**/OFF**[*1]
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected.

■ Display

Models with A-type meter

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
	Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—
Night Mode	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
	Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

Continued

Models with B-type meter

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

■ Sound

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 311	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Balance / Fader[*1]**/Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*2]			
Bose Centerpoint[*2]			
Speed Volume Compensation[*1]**/Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*2]			

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

Continued

■ Camera

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➔ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 568	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➔ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 568	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Cross Traffic Monitor		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➔ **Cross Traffic Monitor** P. 564	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

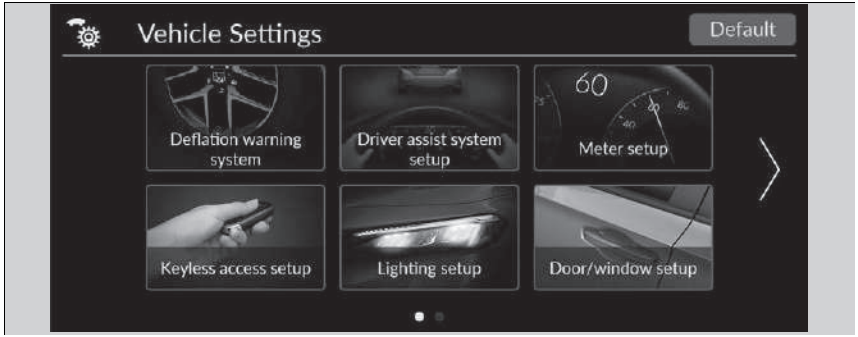
■ Voice Control

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Voice Control Mode	Selects a mode of the voice portal screen. ➔ **Voice Control Operation*1** P. 297	**Assist/Normal**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Deflation warning system** P. 358
- **Driver assist system setup** P. 358
- **Meter setup** P. 359
- **Keyless access setup** P. 361
- **Lighting setup** P. 361
- **Door/window setup** P. 363
- **Predictive Eco Assist** P. 362
- **INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 362
- **Maintenance info.** P. 363
- **Engine oil level check reminder** P. 363

Continued

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

App Shortcut Function P. 301

■ Deflation warning system

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation warning system	Cancels/Calibrates Deflation Warning System. ➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 457	**Calibrate/Cancel**

■ Driver assist system setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Selects distance for Forward Collision Warning audible and visual alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 472	**Far/Normal*1/Near**
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns On/Off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 485	**ON/OFF*1**
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 528	**Early/Normal/Delayed*1**
Lane keep assist beep	Selects On/Off the LKAS alert for not detecting road lines. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 505	**ON/OFF*1**
Blind spot information	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System** P. 460	**Audible and visual alert*1/ Visual alert only**

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Traffic sign recognition system display	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 537	**Display***1**/None**
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning	Enables over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 537	**ON***1**/OFF**
Driver attention monitor	Selects alert type for Driver Attention Monitor.	**OFF/Tactile alert only/ Tactile and audible alert***1

*1:Default Setting

■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Warning message	Selects whether to display the warning message. ➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 136	**ON/OFF***1
Adjust outside temp. display	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 152	**-3°C ~ ±0°C***1 **~ +3°C**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➲ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 158, 178 ➲ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 160, 180	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➲ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 158, 178 ➲ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 160, 180	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	**Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**
Reverse position alert tone	Turns on/off the reverse alert sound.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➲ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 162, 181	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Speed/distance units	Selects the trip computer units. ➲ **Speed/Distance Units** P. 170	Left-hand drive type **km/h · km**[*1]**/mph · miles** Right-hand drive type **km/h · km/mph · miles**[*1]
Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Keyless access setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door unlock mode	Selects which door unlocks when grabbing the driver's door handle.	**Driver door only**[*1]**/All doors**
Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Lighting setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam*	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Adaptive driving beam*	Turns on or off adaptive driving beam function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Lights** P. 261	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 229	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Headlight integration with wipers	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 229	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Predictive Eco Assist

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Predictive Eco Assist	Turns Predictive Eco Assist On and Off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ INDIVIDUAL Settings

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Powertrain	Changes the responsiveness of the powertrain.	**ECON/NORMAL**[*1]**/SPORT**
Steering	Changes the level of steering effort.	**NORMAL**[*1]**/SPORT**
Gauge*	Selects the gauges to be displayed in the Driver Information Interface.	**NORMAL**[*1]**/SPORT**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ Door/window setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Key and remote unlock mode	Selects which door unlocks when using the key or keyless access remote.	**Driver door only*1/All doors**
Keyless lock notification	Turns On/Off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/ unlocked by remote.	**ON*1/OFF**
Auto folding door mirror	Selects door mirror auto folding operation.	**ON*1/OFF**
Remote Window Control	Changes the settings for the remote window control function.	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ Maintenance info.

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance info.	Resets the maintenance information. ➡ **Service Reminder System*** P. 580	**Selects Reset Items**

■ Engine oil level check reminder

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Engine oil level check reminder	Resets the engine oil level check reminder.	**Reset/Cancel**

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

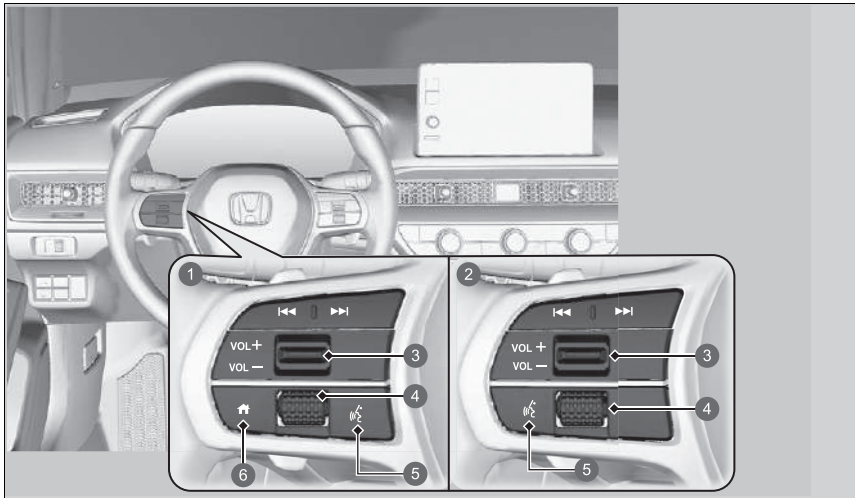
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

HFT Buttons



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ **VOL** ⊞/**VOL** ⊟ (Volume) Switch
❹ Left Selector Wheel
❺ (Talk) Button
❻ (Home) Button (Models with A-type meter)

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 377

Continued

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.
(Home) button*: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Models with A-type meter

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

Left Selector Wheel: Roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 381

Hands-Free Telephone System

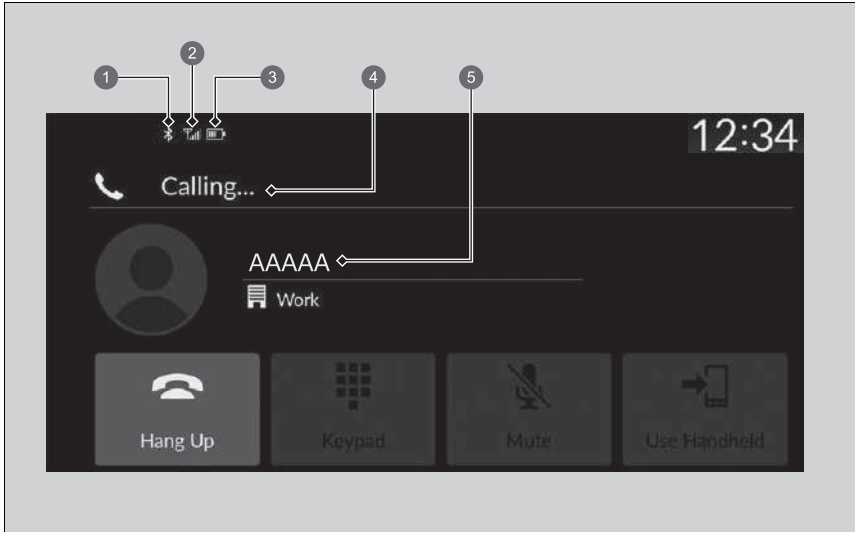
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

* Not available on all models

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

Continued

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Limitations for Manual Operation

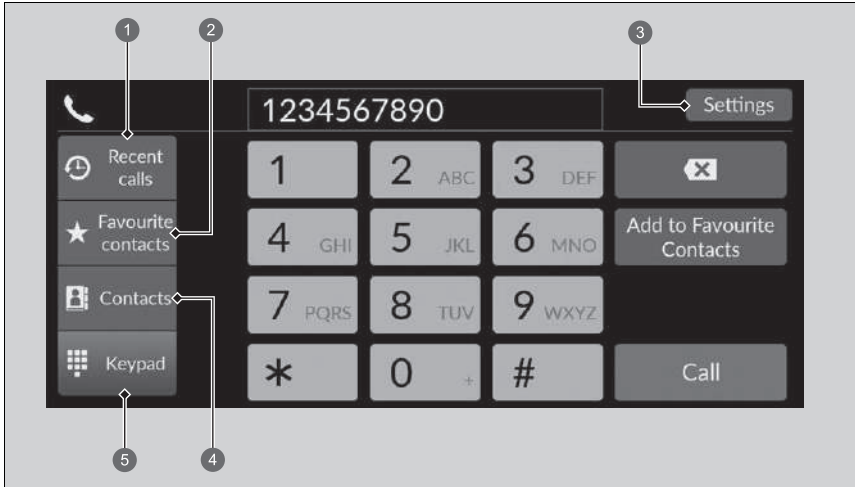
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➔ **Favourite Contacts** P. 377

■ HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



❶ **Recent calls**
❷ **Favourite contacts**
❸ **Settings**
❹ **Contacts**
❺ **Keypad**

HFT Menus

Some functions are limited while driving.

Continued

Recent calls: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 379

Favourite contacts: Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.

➡ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 379

Settings: Changes the phone settings.

➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 371

Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.

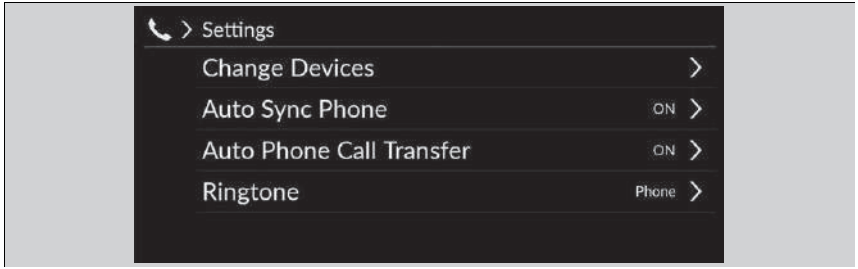
➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 380

Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.

➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 380

Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 372

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

➡ **Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls** P. 375

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

➡ **Automatic Transferring** P. 376

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

➡ **Ringtone** P. 376

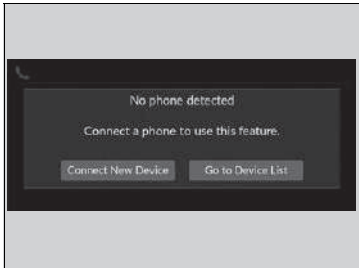
Continued

Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

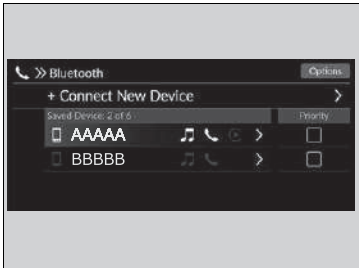
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

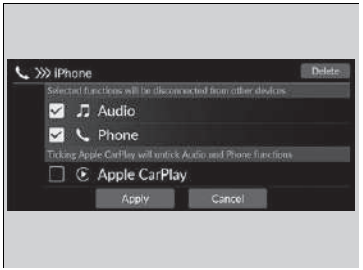
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

Continued



■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
6. Select **Apply**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Continued

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

★	Pref		Fax
	Home		Car
	Mobile		Voice
	Work		Other
	Pager		

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

Ringtone

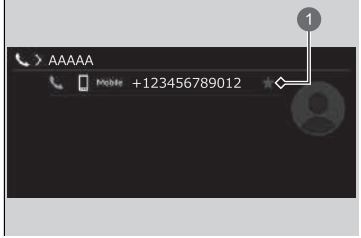
Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen

❶ Star Icon

Contacts Screen



❶ Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Recent calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

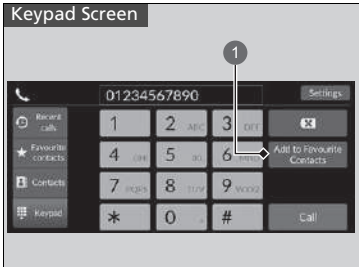
On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.

▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.

Continued



1 Add to Favourite Contacts

■ To edit a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Recent calls**.

▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialling starts automatically.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Favourite contacts**.

▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialling starts automatically.

Continued

Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled: Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

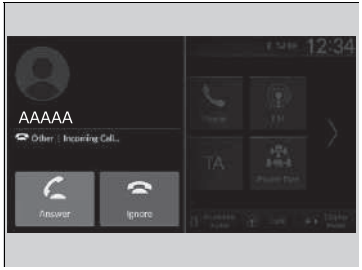
■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialling starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
▶ Dialling starts automatically.

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.

To pick the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

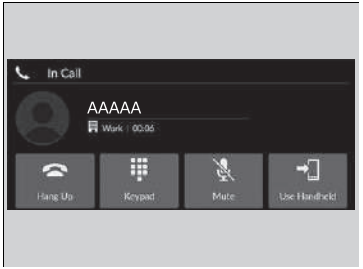
Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

Continued

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
No response from device	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
Made for iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.
  MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Recommended Devices

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

Continued

■ MKV File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ ASF/WMV File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv	
Compatible audio codec	WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Select **General Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **About**.
4. Select **Legal Information**.

Licence Information

■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by PANASONIC CORPORATION is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

■ Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.
Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Made for iPhone | iPod

Continued

■ MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD (“MPEG-4 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

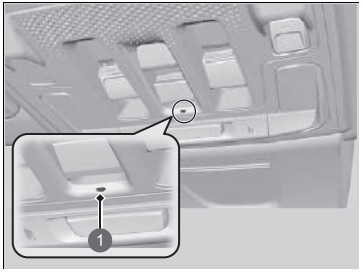
USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Automatic emergency call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

1 eCall Indicator

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

Emergency Call (eCall)

Your vehicle is equipped with the 112-based eCall service system.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the on-board sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

➡ **Manual emergency call** P. 396

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.

- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 5 seconds*1/30 seconds*2, then it will light up in green.

If the 112-based eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:

- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

*1: Except Turkish models
*2: Turkish models

Emergency Call (eCall)

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

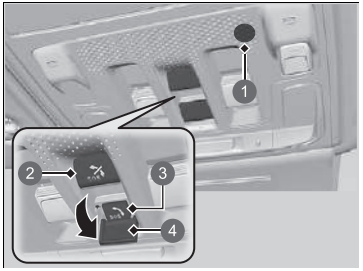
Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:

- both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

Manual emergency call



If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually: Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds has elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

1. Microphone
2. **SOS** Cancel Button
3. **SOS** Button
4. Cover

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

Emergency Call (eCall)

Data privacy

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

Continued

Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

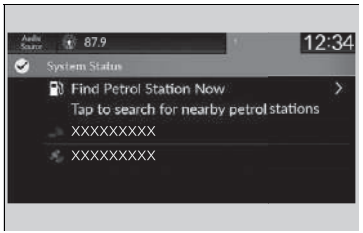
Honda eCall Service Information:
If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service book or your local Honda website for a list of offices.

Refuel Recommend

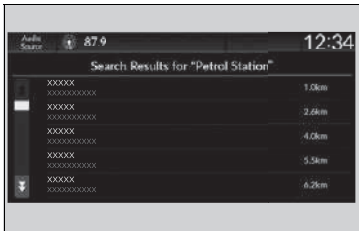
Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for petrol stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.

1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.

❶ Notification Icon



3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now**.



4. Choose a petrol station from the search screen of the navigation system.
   ▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

Refuel Recommend

You can turn the **Refuel Recommend** function on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the fuel level in the tank is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** or put more than 5 litres of petrol into the fuel tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select **OFF** in the settings for **Refuel Recommend**.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 402
Towing a Trailer 406
When Driving
Turning on the Power 411
Precautions While Driving 415
Transmission 417
Shifting 418
Deceleration Paddle Selector 425
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 428
Drive Mode Switch 429
Adjustable Speed Limiter 437
Intelligent Speed Limiter 444
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 454
Agile Handling Assist 456
Deflation Warning System 457
Blind Spot Information System 460
High Voltage Battery 466
Adjusting Headlight Distribution 467
Honda Sensing 468
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 472
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 485
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 505
Traffic Jam Assist 518
Road Departure Mitigation System... 528
Traffic Sign Recognition System 537
Front Wide View Camera 545
Braking 547
Brake System 547
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 554
Brake Assist System 555
Parking Your Vehicle 557
Multi-View Rear Camera 568
Refueling 570
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 573

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 618
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➔ **Load Limit** P. 405
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the hatch.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➔ **Seats** P. 250
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 258
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➔ **Mirrors** P. 247
  ➔ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 246

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 52
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➔ **Indicators** P. 114

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 698

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 698

Load Limit

WARNING

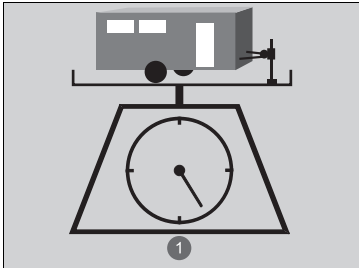
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing Preparation

Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



1 Total Load

Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

Towing Load Limits

WARNING

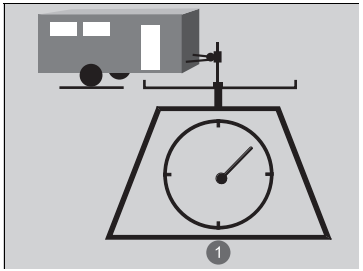
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on luggage distribution.
Refer to the trailer owner's manual for additional information.

Break-in Period.
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (600 miles).

When using a detachable towing device, always remove the towing device when not in use and only install it when towing so that it does not cover or hide anything on the rear of your vehicle, such as the exterior lights or licence plate.



■ Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 75 kg (165 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 750 kg (1,654 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

❶ Trailer Nose Load

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% towards the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Towing Load Limits

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

➡ **Specifications** P. 698

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Continued

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.
Improper installation and setup can affect the electrical components, handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.
The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

■ Sway control

This device can be used if your trailer tends to sway. Your trailer maker can tell you what kind of sway control you need and how to install it. Improper installation could degrade the handling and stability of your vehicle.

■ Trailer mirrors

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  ➡ **Towing Load Limits** P. 406
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Turn off the rear parking sensor system.
  ➡ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 563

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).

Parking
In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

When towing a trailer, we recommend that you carry a full-size spare wheel and tyre for both your vehicle and trailer. If you use the compact spare tyre* that came with your vehicle, it could adversely affect vehicle handling.

Remember to unhitch the trailer before changing a flat tyre. Ask the trailer sales or rental agency where and how to store the trailer's spare tyre.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads.

Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

Driving in Hilly Terrain

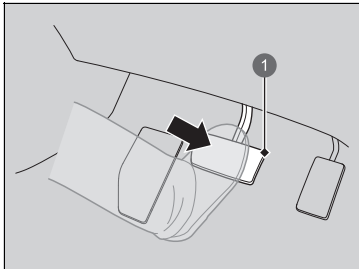
- Closely watch your high temperature message. If the message remains on, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Towing Speeds and Gears

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h (55 mph). At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

Turning on the Power

1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Brake Pedal

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

2. Depress the brake pedal.

Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres (8,000 feet).

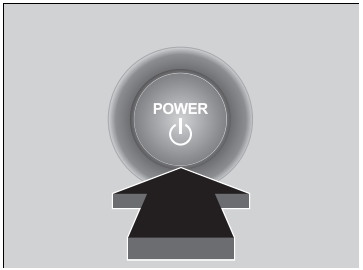
When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

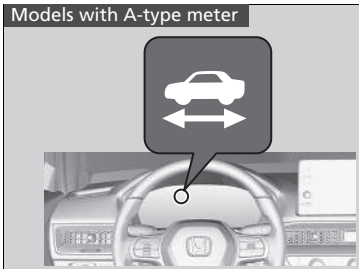
The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 210

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

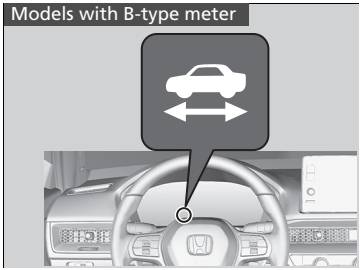
Continued



Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.

4. Check the (Ready) indicator.

▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the indicator comes on.

▶ The indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.

▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.

➔ **Indicators** P. 114

Turning on the Power

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

➔ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 670

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system.
If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.
You can start driving with the indicator on.
If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

➔ **Indicators** P. 114

Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the indicator is on, then put the transmission into D. Select R when reversing.
2. With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
   ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
   ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 547
   ➡ **If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message** P. 685

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into D when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continued

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.
Make sure to check if the indicator is on before you start to drive.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to P.
▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

Precautions While Driving

In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

Continued

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km (600 miles) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles) after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler:
- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Transmission

■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift button positions

P Park
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.
Transmission is locked.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
- Used for normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is on.

Shifting

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

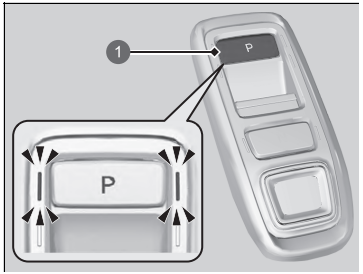
A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:
- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

■ P (park) button



1 P Button

The shift position changes to P when you press the P button while the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON.
The indicators on the sides of the P button come on.

Shifting

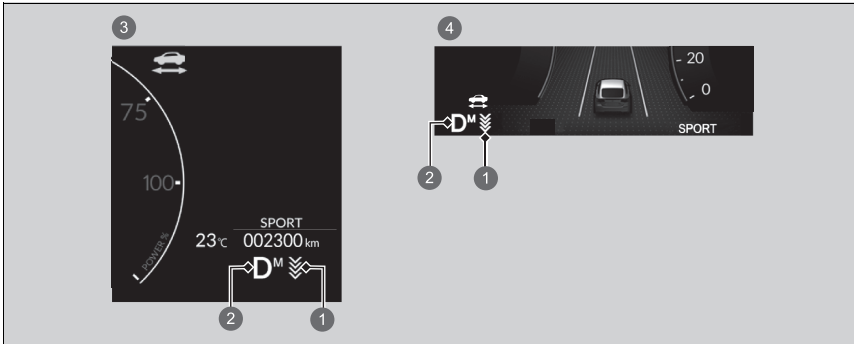
The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in N.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 136

Change the shift position to D or R with the brake pedal depressed.

Continued

Shift Operation



1. Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
2. Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
3. Models with A-type meter
4. Models with B-type meter

Shift Operation

NOTICE

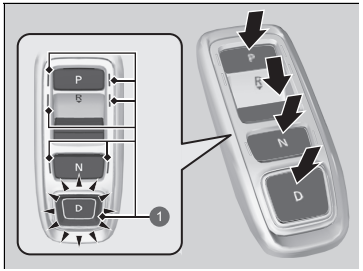
When you change D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.
When changing the shift position to P, always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before selecting a shift button.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position, or all the shift position indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

The beeper sounds once when you change to R.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348



❶ Shift Button Indicator

P Press the P button.

R Press back the R button.

N Press the N button.

D Press the D button.

Continued

■ When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to P.

▶ If you manually change the shift position from P with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to P once you release the brake pedal.

- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h (1 mph) or slower.
- The transmission is in other than P.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.

■ When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than P, the shift position automatically changes to P.

When opening the driver's door

While the system is designed to automatically change the shift position to P under the described conditions, in the interest of safety you should always select P before opening the driver's door.
Make sure to park the vehicle in a safe place.

➡ **When Stopped** P. 557

If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to P under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the power system and lock the doors.

■ If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode)

With the power system on:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.

2. Select N.

3. Within five seconds, press **POWER** button.

▶ This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.

▶ The shift position remains in N with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to P.

Manually changing to P cancels ACCESSORY mode. The P indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF.

Continued

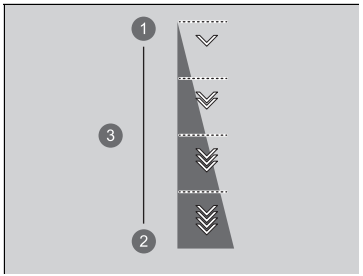
■ Restrictions on selecting a shift position

You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/changes to:	How to change the shift position
P	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	P	Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.			
N	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.		N	
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.			
N or D	The vehicle is moving forward.	R		Park your vehicle in a safe place.
R or N	The vehicle is moving backward.	D		
R, N or D	The vehicle is moving.	P		
P or N	The indicator is not on.	A shift position other than P or N	P or N	Make sure that the indicator comes on.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.
When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



The default deceleration stage is ⩔. Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

▶ The deceleration stage may not change if you keep the paddle selector pulled back.

❶ Decrease
❷ Increase
❸ Deceleration Stage

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the [+] selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the [−] selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.

Pull the [+] selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

Continued

Deceleration Paddle Selector

⚠CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

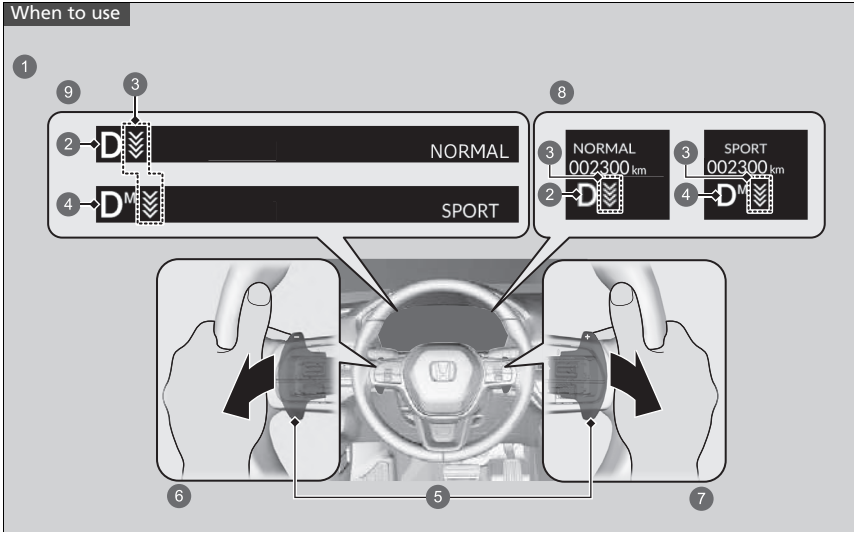
Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you pull back right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with low speed follow.
- The brake pad temperature is too hot.
- Change the shift position to [P], [R] or [N].

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC with low speed follow will cancel automatically.



1. Shift position is in D
2. When **SPORT** mode is OFF, the deceleration stage appears.
3. Deceleration Stage
4. When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.
5. Paddle Selector
6. Increase the deceleration stage when pulling the (− paddle selector (left side))
7. Decrease the deceleration stage when pulling the (+ paddle selector (right side))
8. Models with A-type meter
9. Models with B-type meter

■ When SPORT mode is OFF

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.
When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the [+] selector (right side) for a few seconds.
The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the gauge disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

■ When SPORT mode is ON

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge. The deceleration stage will not cancel automatically while **SPORT** mode is ON.
When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the **SPORT** mode OFF, or pull the [+] selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the gauge disappears.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Drive Mode Switch

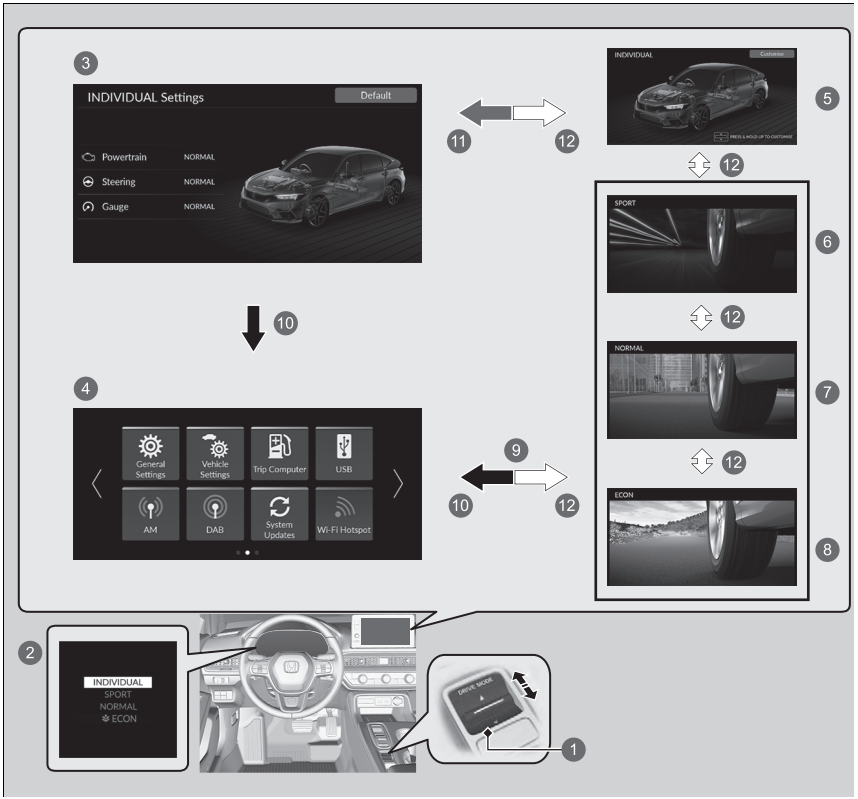
You can choose between four modes, **SPORT** mode, **NORMAL** mode, **ECON** mode, and **INDIVIDUAL** mode by using the **DRIVE MODE** switch.
The current mode is displayed on the gauge, and each mode will appear differently.

Drive Mode Switch

The mode may not be able to be changed when:
- The vehicle is turning.
- The VSA system is activating.
- There is a problem with the engine, motor, the VSA, and the EPS.

Continued

■ Selecting the Drive Mode



1. **DRIVE MODE** Switch
2. Changing modes by **DRIVE MODE** switch alters the screen on the driver information interface.
3. **INDIVIDUAL Settings** Screen
4. Audio/Information Screen
5. **INDIVIDUAL** Mode
6. **SPORT** Mode
7. **NORMAL** Mode
8. **ECON** Mode
9. The display returns to audio/information screen a few seconds after pressing the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down.
10. Press the BACK or HOME button
11. Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customise**
    ➡ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 435
12. Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down

Continued

SPORT Mode

Enhances heightened throttle and steering response and modified active sound control.

NORMAL Mode

Balances handling and riding in all environments.

■ ECON Mode

Helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, motor and climate control system.

■ INDIVIDUAL Mode

Each category can be customized separately to suit the driver's preference.

➡ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings**
P. 435

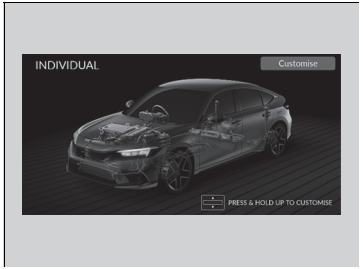
Continued

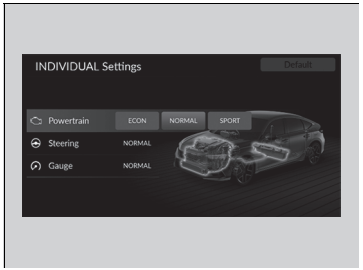
■ Next start-up mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Drive Mode	Next Drive Mode
ECON Mode	**ECON** Mode
NORMAL Mode	**NORMAL** Mode
INDIVIDUAL Mode	**NORMAL** Mode
SPORT Mode	**NORMAL** Mode

Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings





1. Select **INDIVIDUAL** mode.
2. Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customise** to open the **INDIVIDUAL Settings**.
   ▶ You can also select from customized features on the audio/information screen.
   ➡ **Selecting the Drive Mode** P. 430
   ➡ **Customized Features** P. 348
3. Select the setting category.
4. Select the desired setting.

Continued

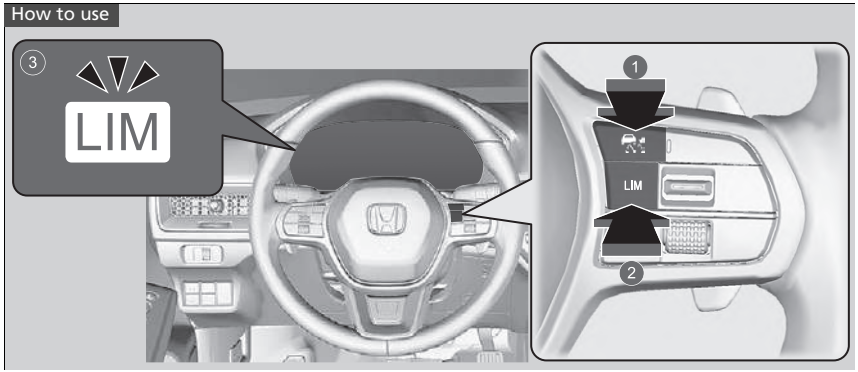
Category	Description
Powertrain	Select **ECON**, **NORMAL** or **SPORT** for the throttle response
Steering	Select **NORMAL** or **SPORT** for the steering effort
Models with B-type meter **Gauge**	Select **NORMAL** or **SPORT** to set the gauges to be displayed
All models **Default**	**Powertrain**, **Steering**, and **Gauge*** are set to **NORMAL**

* Not available on all models

Adjustable Speed Limiter

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).

How to use



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.
3. **The Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
   Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

Continued

Adjustable Speed Limiter

WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

WARNING

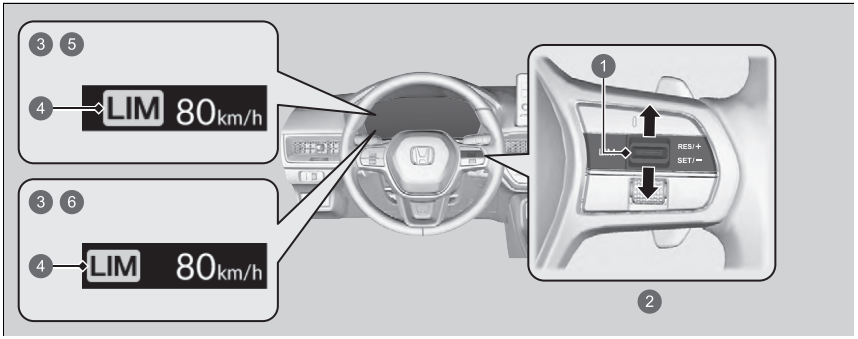
Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the Adjustable Speed Limiter and below systems at the same time.
-Adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow
-Intelligent speed limiter

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+/SET/-** Switch
2. Up or down
3. On when the adjustable speed limiter is set.
4. Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)
5. Models with A-type meter
6. Models with B-type meter

- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed.
  The moment you release the switch, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.

To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limit is set to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more on a steep descent.

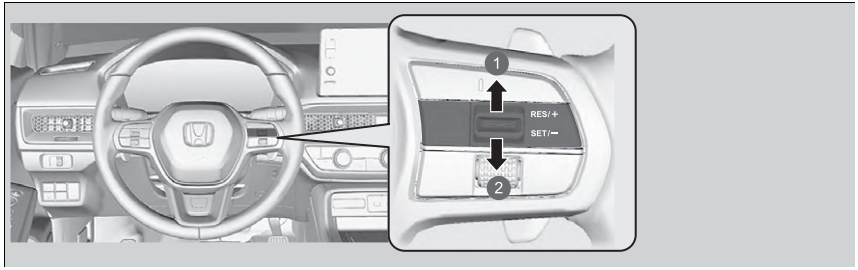
The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between km/h and mph on the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/-** switch pressed up or down, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h or 10 mph every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

Continued

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.

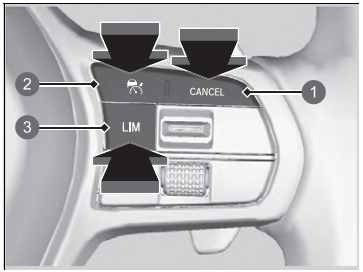
▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel



❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ Button
❸ **LIM** Button

To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

Resuming the prior set speed:
Press the **CANCEL** button to display the prior set speed (grey) and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up to resume the prior set speed.
If you are driving at a speed faster than the prior set speed (grey), the adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.
If you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up when no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

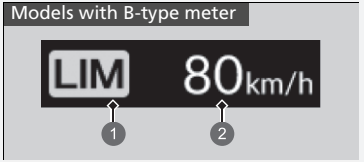
Models with A-type meter

❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Continued

To Cancel

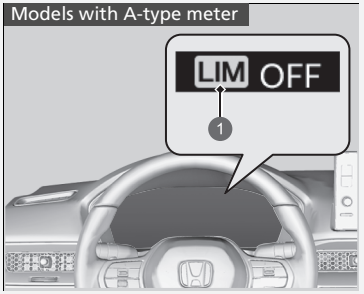
Models with B-type meter



1. Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)
2. Prior Set Speed (Grey)

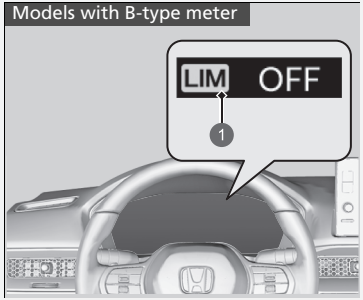
If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

Models with A-type meter



1. Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

To Cancel



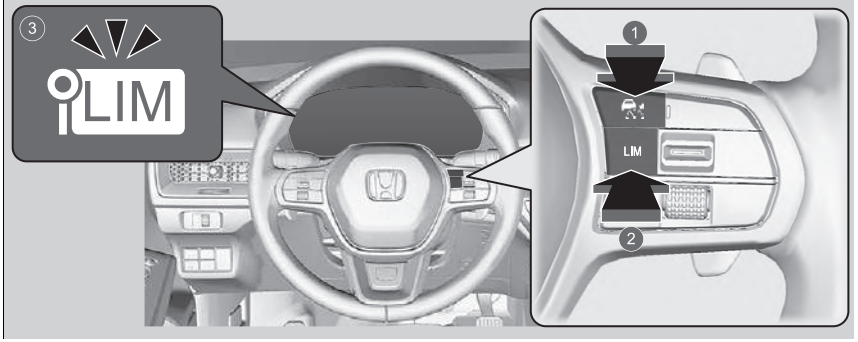
1 Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

Intelligent Speed Limiter

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 537

How to use



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.
3. **The Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
   Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

⚠WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 537

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:

To cancel

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily

- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

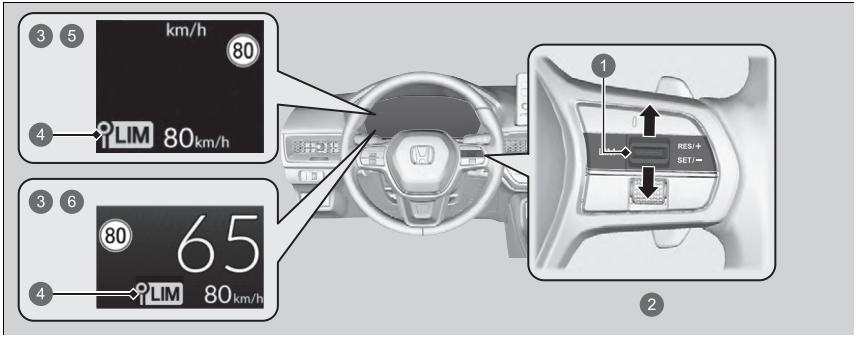
The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

Continued

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+/SET/-** Switch
2. Up or down
3. On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
4. Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)
5. Models with A-type meter
6. Models with B-type meter

- The moment you release the switch, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.
Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

To Set the Speed Limit

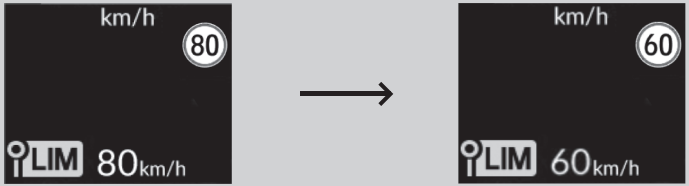
If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.

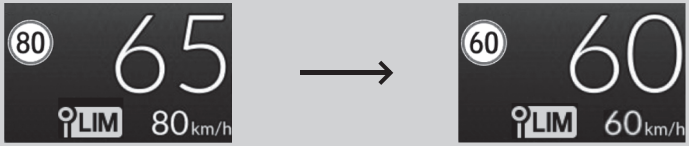
■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



To Set the Speed Limit

The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.

Models with A-type meter

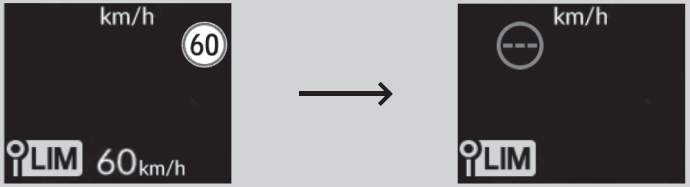
Models with B-type meter

Continued

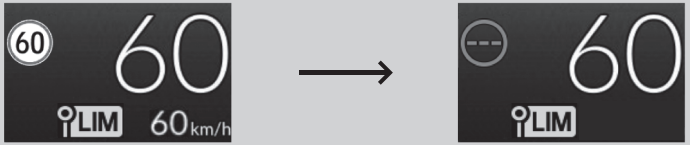
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.

Models with A-type meter



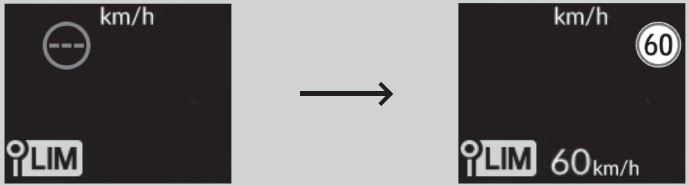
Models with B-type meter



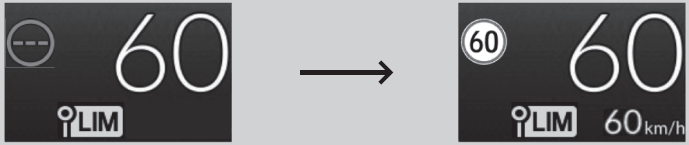
■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

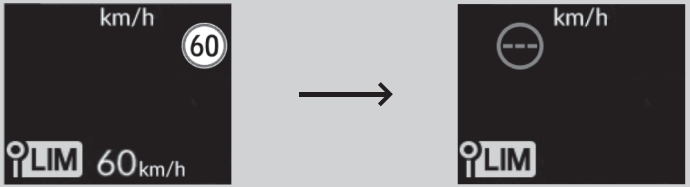


Continued

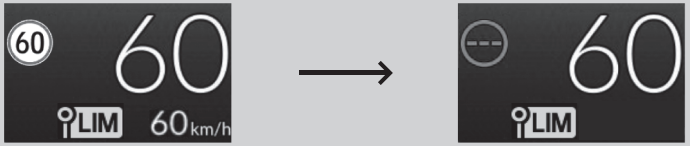
■ When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.

Models with A-type meter

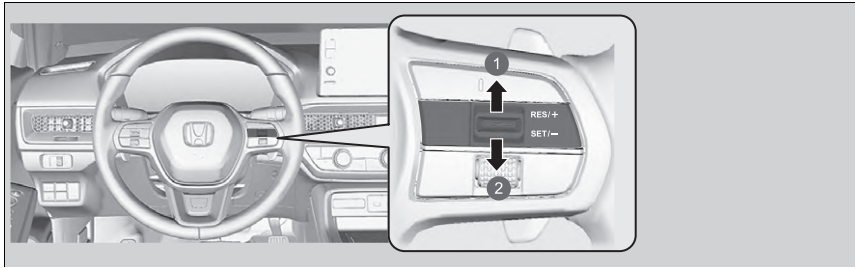


Models with B-type meter



To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h or +5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h or -5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

Continued

To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

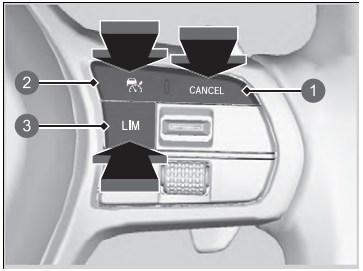
You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

■ To Cancel



❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ Button
❸ **LIM** Button

To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

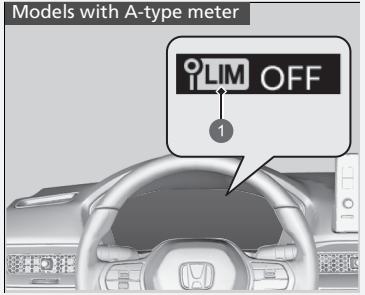
The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

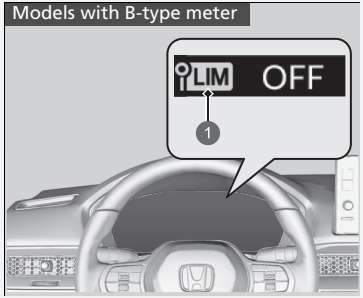
Models with A-type meter



❶ Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

To Cancel

Models with B-type meter



1 Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

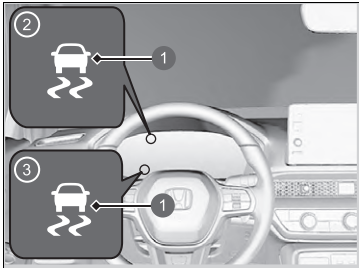
If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 537

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



❶ VSA System Indicator
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

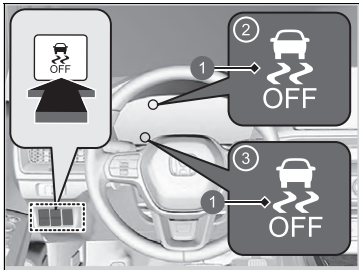
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF***, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

VSA On and Off



❶ VSA **OFF** Indicator
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

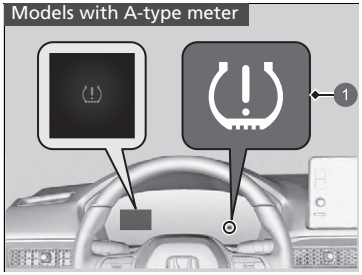
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

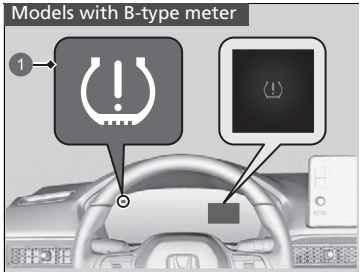
Models with A-type meter



❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter



❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 618

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF***, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) may come on along with a message in the gauge after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  Checking Tyres P. 618

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tyre* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains are used.

Deflation Warning System Calibration

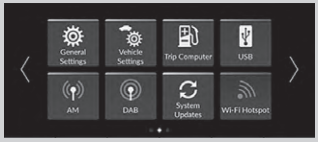
The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h (25-62 mph). During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

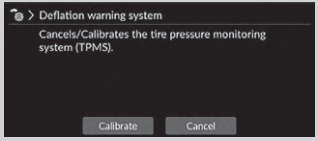
If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

* Not available on all models





When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Blind Spot Information System

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Blind Spot Information System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Blind Spot Information System has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the Blind Spot Information System may result in a collision.

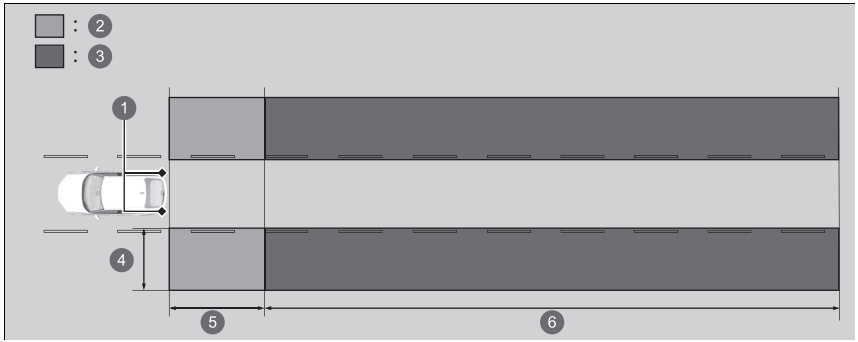
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:

- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

How the System Works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 km/h (12 mph) or above.



❶ Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
❷ Alert Zone 1
❸ Alert Zone 2
Alert zone range
❹ Approx. 0.5 and 3 metres (1.6 and 10 ft.) from vehicle side.
❺ Approx. 3 metres (10 ft.) from rear bumper.
❻ Approx. 3 and 25 metres (10 and 82 ft.) behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

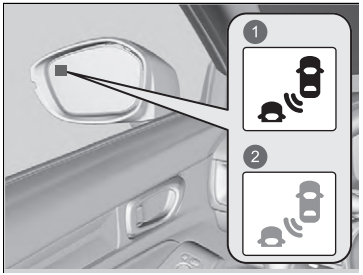
The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

Continued

How the System Works

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.
The system may not work properly for the following reasons:
- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the blind spot information system alert indicators to come on.

■ When the system detects a vehicle



❶ Comes On
❷ Blinks

Blind spot information system alert indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h (31 mph).
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h (12 mph).

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the blind spot information system alert indicator is on.

▶ The beeper sounds three times.

Blind Spot Information System

For proper Blind Spot Information System operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

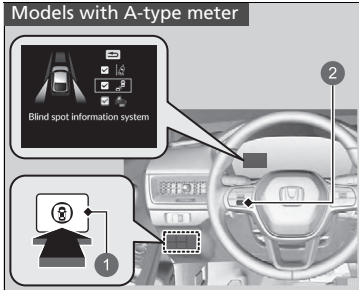
- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come and the message **Blind spot information not available** appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF***, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Blind Spot Information System On and Off

Models with A-type meter



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the blind spot information system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

2. Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

The blind spot information system will stay on the previously selected on (ticked) or off (unticked) setting each time you turn the power system on.

Blind Spot Information System

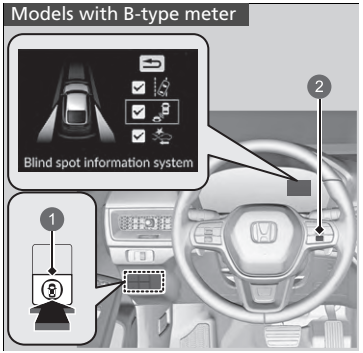
You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

➔ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 155
➔ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 175

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

Continued



1 Safety Support Switch
2 Right Selector Wheel

Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The Blind Spot Information System may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

High Voltage Battery

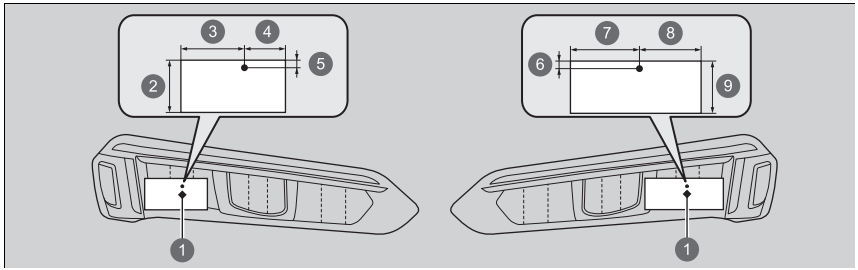
The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.
Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Centre point
2. 40 mm (1.57 inches)
3. 48 mm (1.89 inches)
4. 32 mm (1.26 inches)
5. 10 mm (0.39 inches)
6. 10 mm (0.39 inches)
7. 52 mm (2.05 inches)
8. 48 mm (1.89 inches)
9. 40 mm (1.57 inches)

1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm (1.57 inches) wide and 100 mm (3.94 inches)*1 or 80 mm (3.15 inches)*2 long.
▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.

2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

*1: For the driver's side headlight
*2: For the passenger's side headlight

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Honda Sensing

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has the following functions.

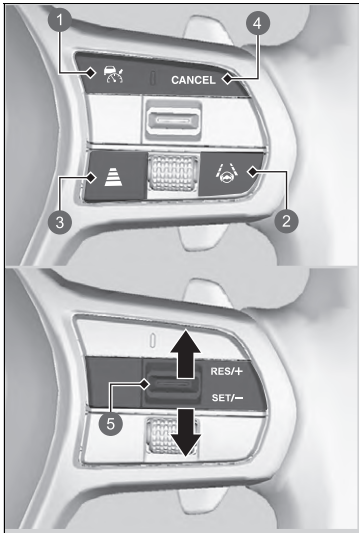
■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➔ P. 472
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➔ P. 528
- Traffic Sign Recognition System ➔ P. 537

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➔ P. 485
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➔ P. 505
- Traffic Jam Assist ➔ P. 518

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist



❶ Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

❷ LKAS Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist.
Or press to cancel these systems.

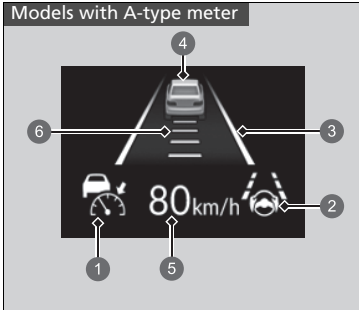
❸ Interval Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

❹ **CANCEL** Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❺ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

Continued

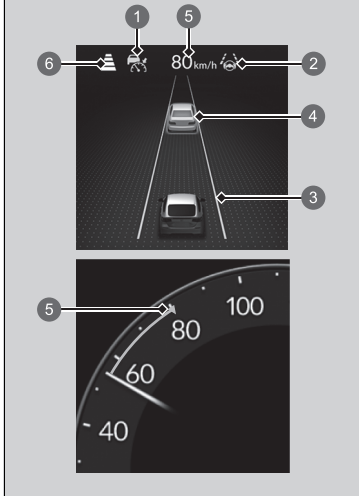
Gauge Content



You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist.

1. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
   - Green: The system is on.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
2. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is ready to be activated.
   - Green: The system is on.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
3. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
   - Green lines: The system is on.
   - White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
   - Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

Models with B-type meter



4 Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

Models with B-type meter

- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
- Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

5 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.

6 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

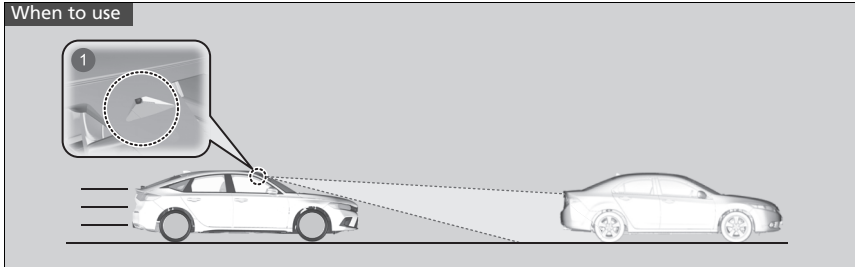
The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 478

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

■ How the system works

When to use



❶ The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or above and will search for a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h (3 mph) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle when you turn left*1/right*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h (62 mph) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

Continued

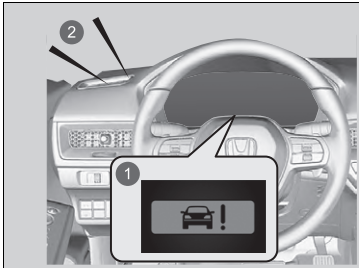
How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 478

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

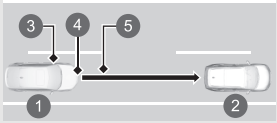
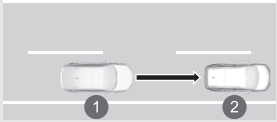
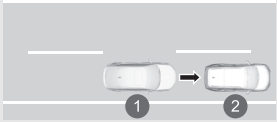
❶ Visual Alerts
❷ Audible Alert

You can change the distance (**Far**/**Normal**/**Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ Collision Alert Stages

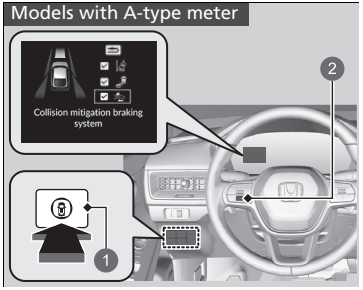
The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Far**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ Far
❹ Normal
❺ Near

Continued

■ CMBS On and Off



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

2. Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

CMBS On and Off

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➔ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 478

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

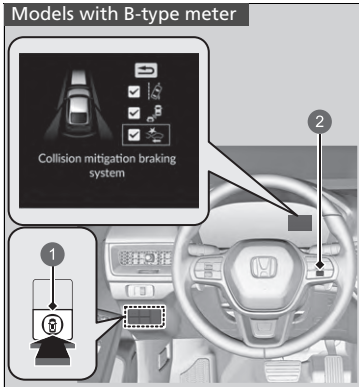
You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

➔ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 155
➔ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 175

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

* Not available on all models



1 Safety Support Switch
2 Right Selector Wheel

Continued

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre (3.3 feet) or taller than about 2 metres (6.6 feet) in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- When the vehicle or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*1/right*2 at an intersection etc.)*3.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type
*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*1/right*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

Continued

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

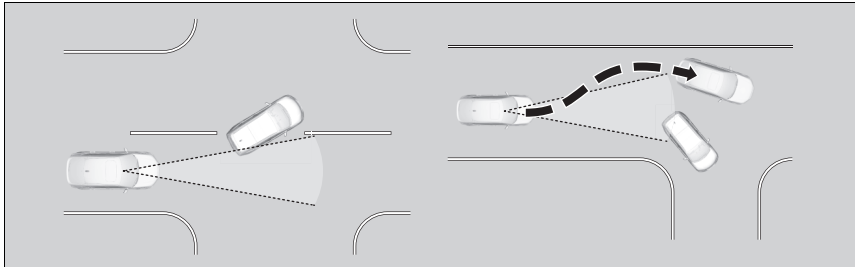
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

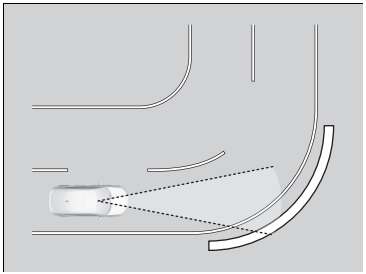
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions.
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

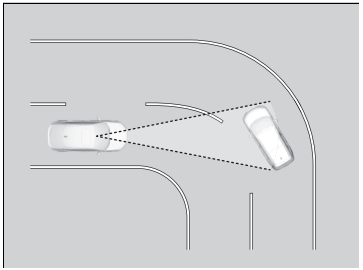


Continued

- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

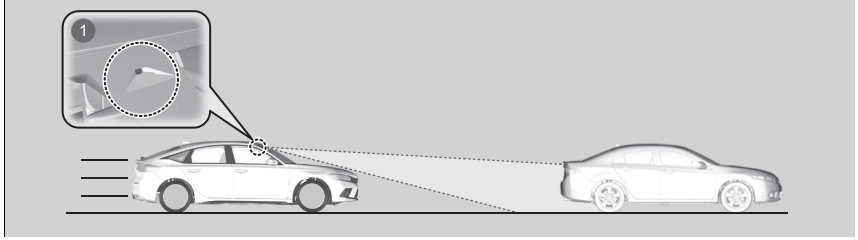


- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.
When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h (112 mph).
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

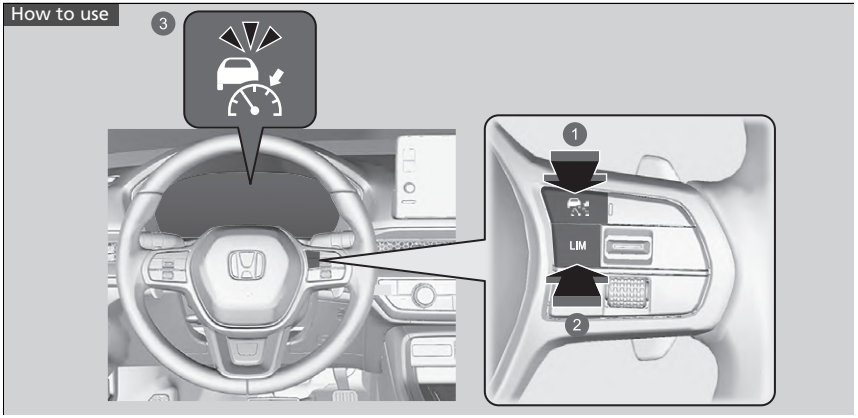
⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Continued

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **LIM** Button
If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❸ **(White) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

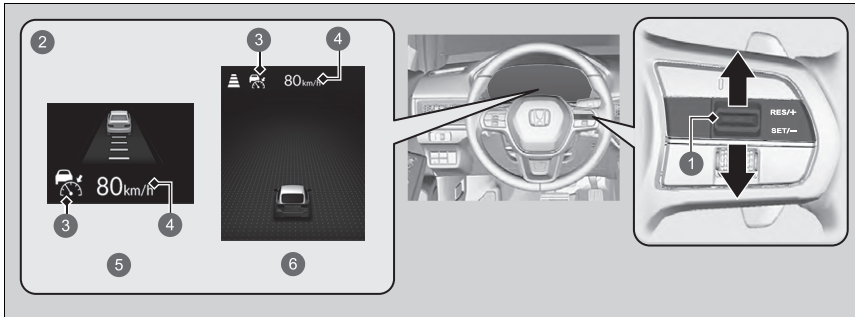
A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



❶ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Up or down
❷ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
❸ (Green)
❹ Set Vehicle Speed (White)
❺ Models with A-type meter
❻ Models with B-type meter

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 495

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

Continued

When driving at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the switch, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h (18 mph): If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h (18 mph) regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF***, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, may come on along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

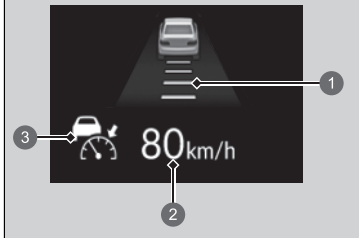
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the audio/information screen between km/h and mph.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

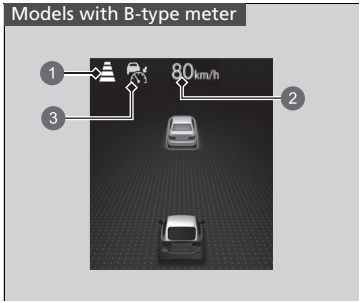
* Not available on all models

Models with A-type meter



❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (Green)

Models with B-type meter



❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (Green)

When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

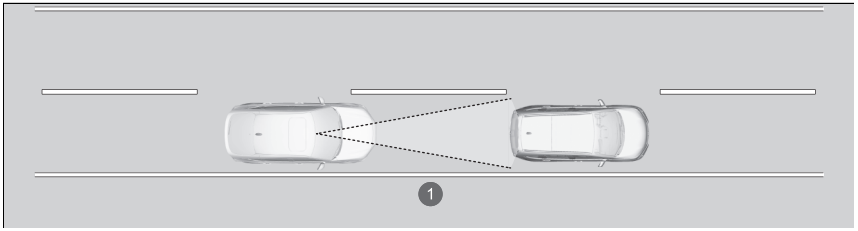
Continued

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

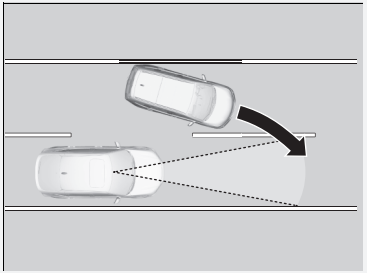
➡ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 500



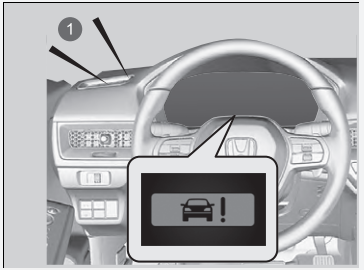
❶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m (394 ft.)

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.

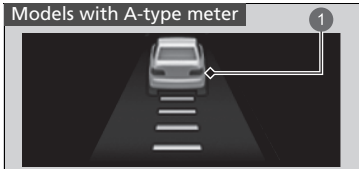


Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



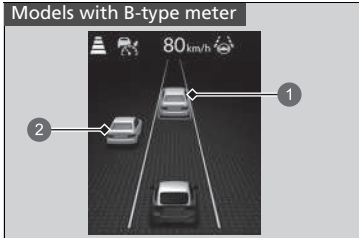
❶ Audible Alert

Models with A-type meter



❶ A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter



❶ Control target vehicle
❷ Outside of control target vehicle

A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.
Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

Limitations

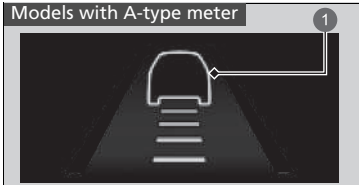
You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 495

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead

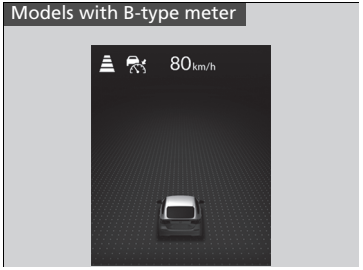
Models with A-type meter



1 A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

Models with B-type meter



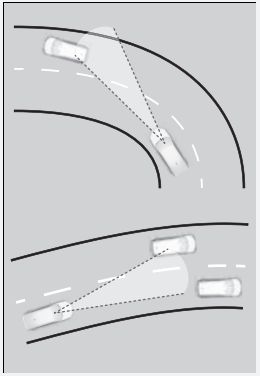
On steep downhill during ACC with Low Speed Follow, it brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



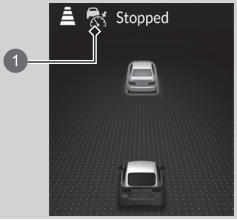
- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

Models with A-type meter

❶ (Green)

Models with B-type meter

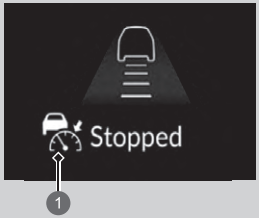


❶ (Green)

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the gauge blinks. If you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the prior set speed.

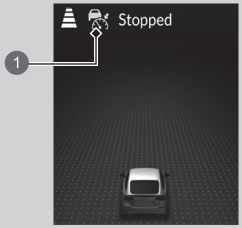
Continued

Models with A-type meter



1 (Green)

Models with B-type meter



1 (Green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

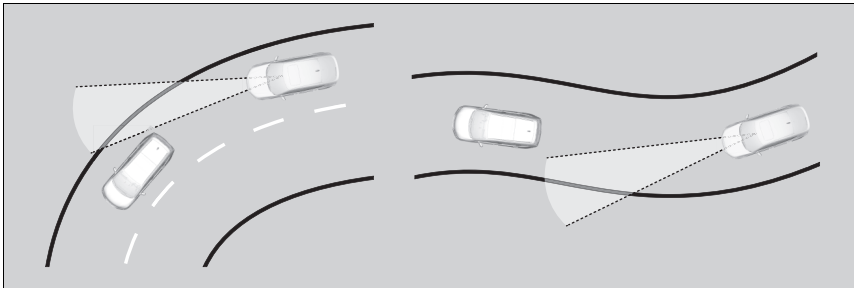
■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

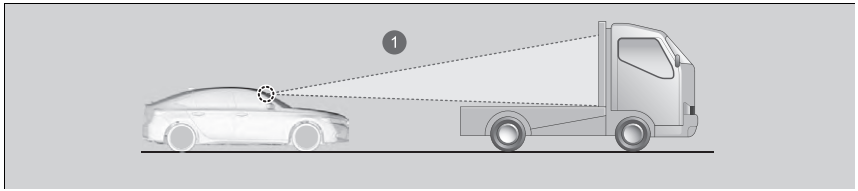
* Not available on all models

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

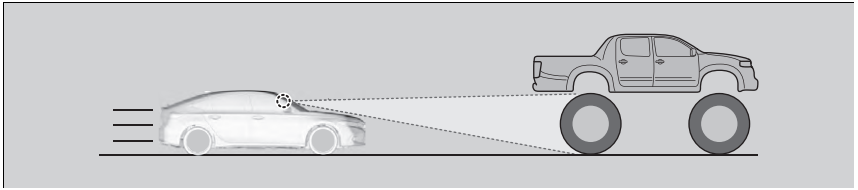
- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



❶ Camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

Continued

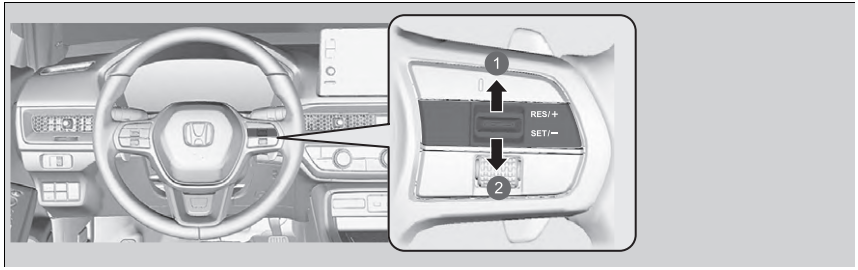
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/-** switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.

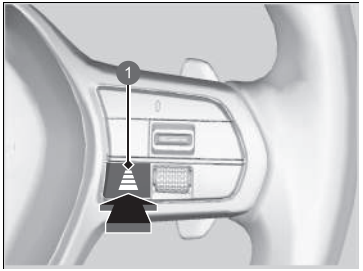
Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/-** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval



1 Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)
Short	*1 *2	26.6 metres 87.3 feet 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 110.6 feet 1.2 sec
Middle	*1 *2	34.6 metres 113.5 feet 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 147.2 feet 1.6 sec
Long	*1 *2	44.0 metres 144.2 feet 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 187.3 feet 2.0 sec
Extra Long	*1 *2	53.6 metres 175.9 feet 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 229.6 feet 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

*1: Models with A-type meter

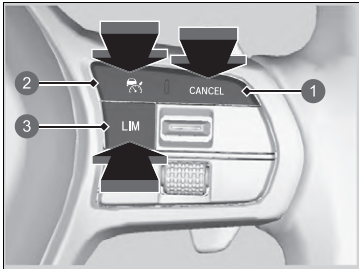
*2: Models with B-type meter

Continued

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

To Cancel



❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ Button
❸ **LIM** Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up even if the vehicle is stopped.
When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.
When pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.
If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.
The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

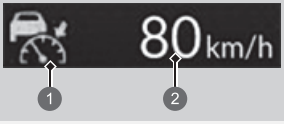
- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

To Cancel

Models with A-type meter

1 (White)
2 Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Models with B-type meter



1 (White)
2 Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Continued

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

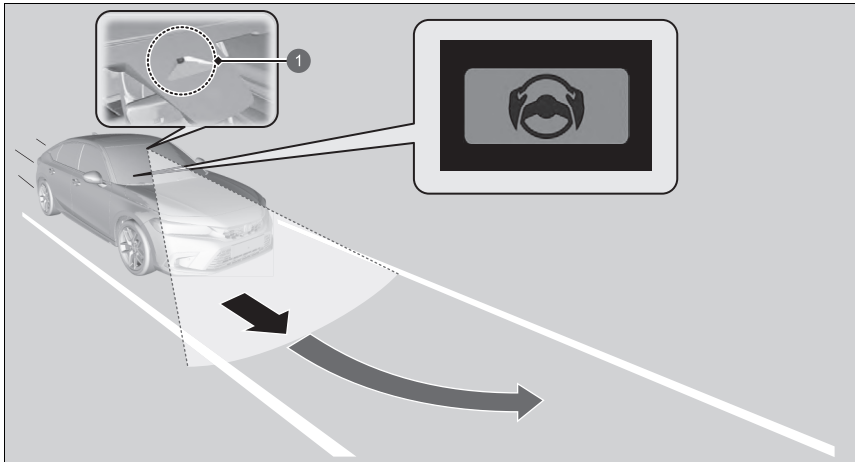
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



❶ Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

Continued

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

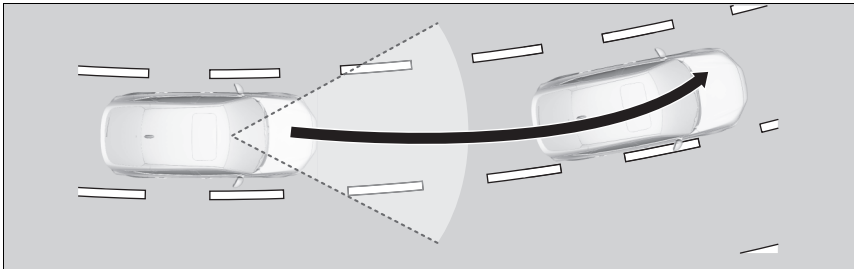
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
➡ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 514

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



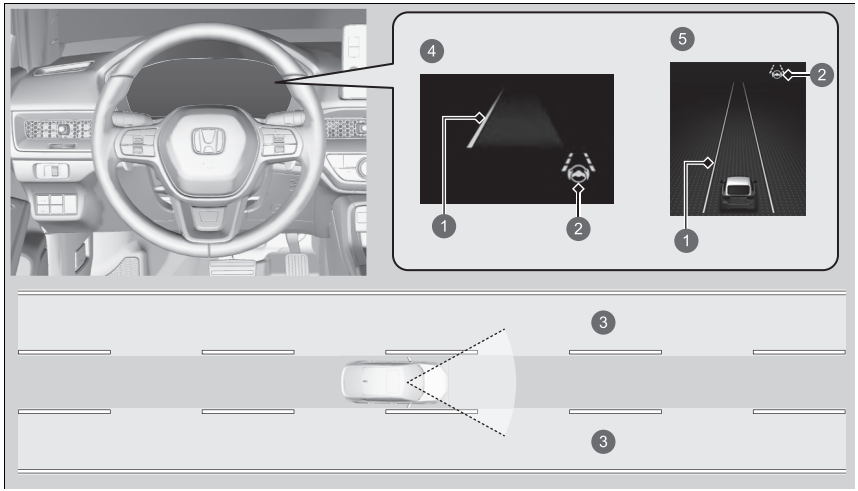
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



❶ Amber line
❷ LKAS indicator (Green)
❸ Warning Area
❹ Models with A-type meter
❺ Models with B-type meter

Continued

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

When the System can be Used

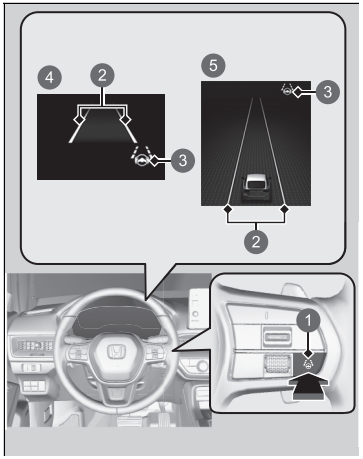
If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

■ How to activate the system

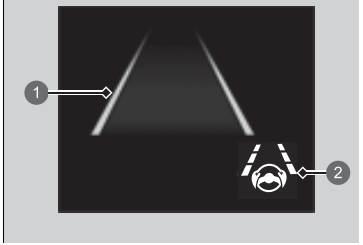


❶ LKAS Button
❷ White lines
❸ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)
❹ Models with A-type meter
❺ Models with B-type meter

1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (White) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

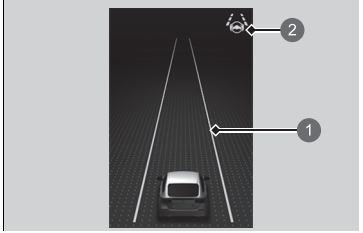
Continued

Models with A-type meter



❶ Green lines
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)

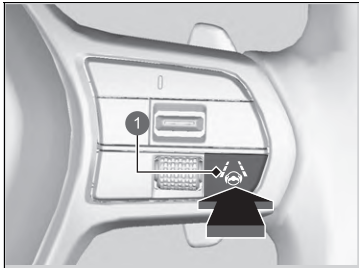
Models with B-type meter



❶ Green lines
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



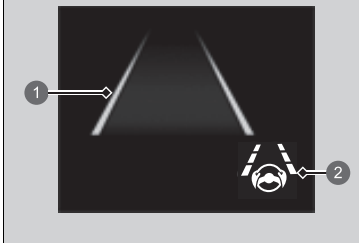
Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

1 LKAS Button

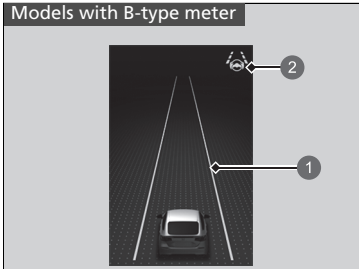
Continued

Models with A-type meter



❶ White lines
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)

Models with B-type meter



❶ White lines
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)

When the LKAS is suspended, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or dissapear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h (40 mph) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h (45 mph) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h (115 mph).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

Continued

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

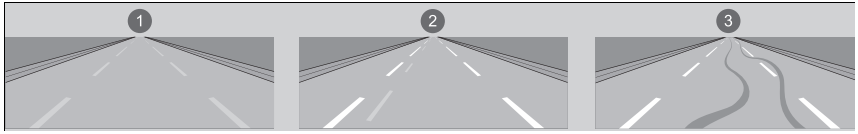
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

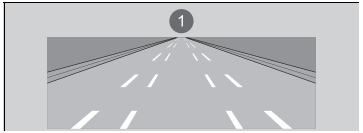
■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



❶ Faded lines
❷ Duplicate lines
❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

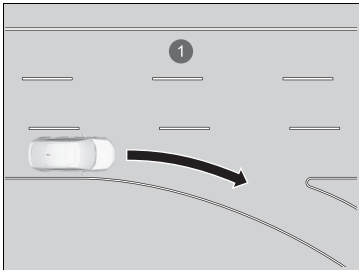


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

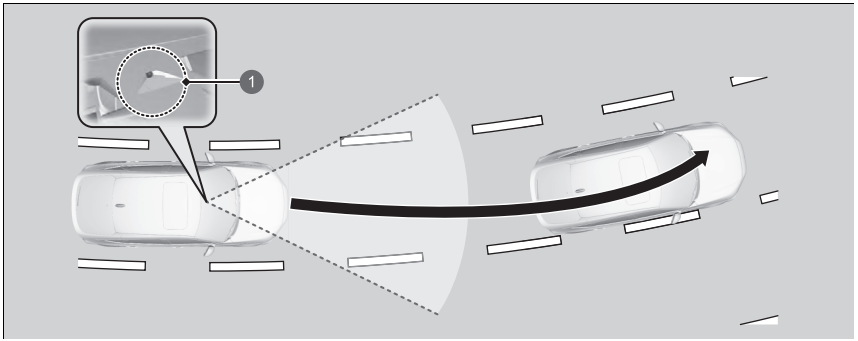
* Not available on all models

Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines.
Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



1 Front Wide View Camera
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.

Traffic Jam Assist

Important Safety Reminders
Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

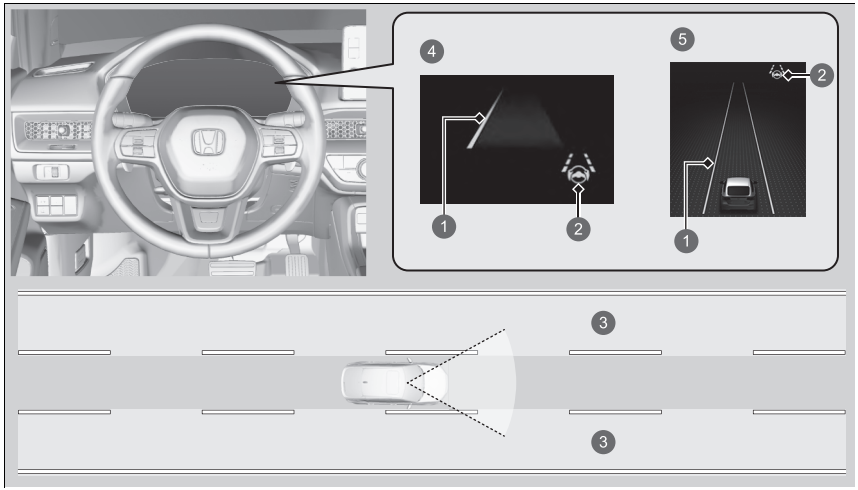
The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:
➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 524

When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.
The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.



Continued

1. Amber line
2. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)
3. Warning Area
4. Models with A-type meter
5. Models with B-type meter

■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:
- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h (0 and 45 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in D.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:
- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
  ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

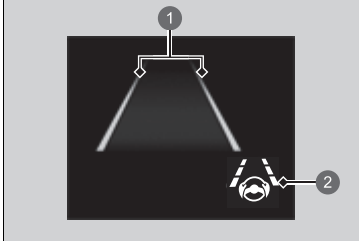
Refer to the following page for proper handling of the LKAS:
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 505

Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:
➔ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist** P. 469

Continued

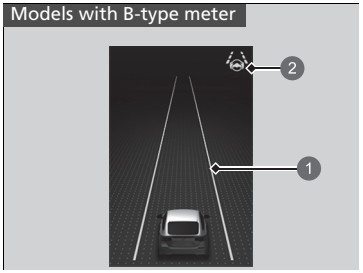
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

Models with A-type meter



1. Green Lines
2. LKAS Indicator (Green)

Models with B-type meter



1. Green lines
2. LKAS Indicator (Green)

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

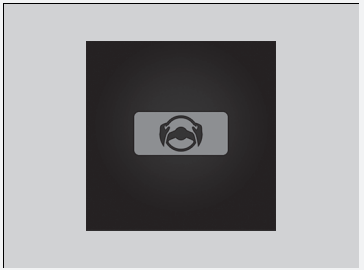
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 524

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

■ Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

The system is automatically temporarily cancelled under the following circumstances.

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

The traffic lane lines will disappear from the screen, the beeper may sound, and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:

- The temperature of the camera is too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You are travelling over 72 km/h (45 mph).
▶When the speed of the vehicle reaches 72 km/h (45 mph), Traffic Jam Assist is deactivated and LKAS is activated instead. Once the speed of the vehicle drops to under 64 km/h (40 mph), Traffic Jam Assist is reactivated.

Continued

Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations

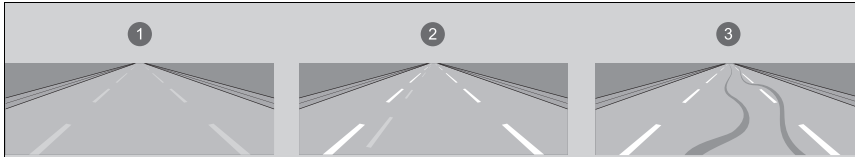
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

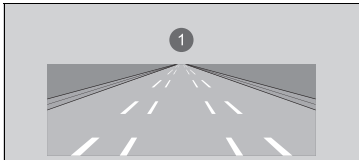
■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



❶ Faded lines
❷ Duplicate lines
❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

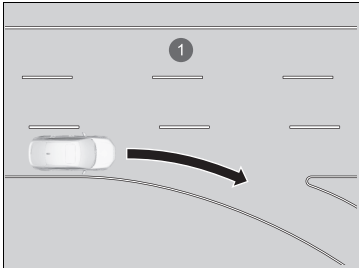


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.

Continued

- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ **Vehicle conditions**

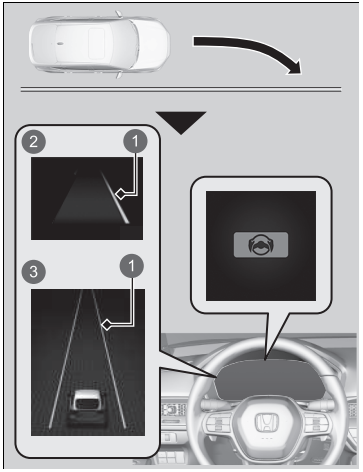
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

■ How the System Works



❶ Amber line
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles.
If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.
In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

As a visual alert, **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

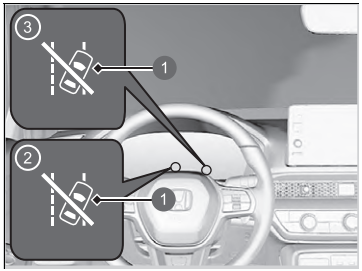
Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or an oncoming vehicle.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.



❶ Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the warning sound is given only.

After a few minutes, Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 533

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel border) or oncoming vehicle.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

Continued

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
  The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
  ▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel border.
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

How the System Activates

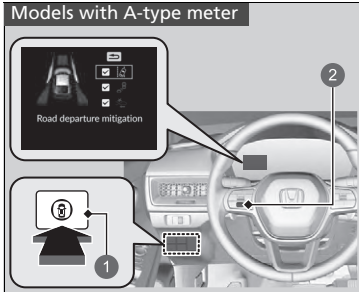
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.
➡ **Indicators** P. 114

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

Models with A-type meter



1. Safety Support Switch
2. Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

2. Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

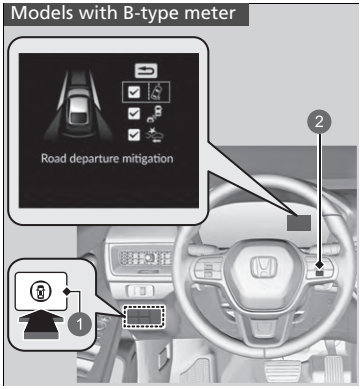
You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

➡ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 155
➡ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 175

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph).
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued



1. Safety Support Switch
2. Right Selector Wheel

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

■ Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of a oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

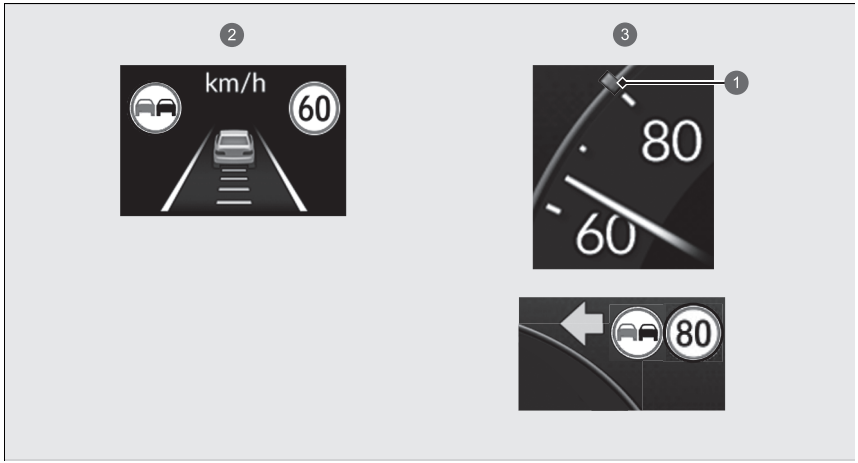
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

■ How the System Works

When the front wide view camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



❶ Speed Limit Sign
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

Continued

Traffic Sign Recognition System

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

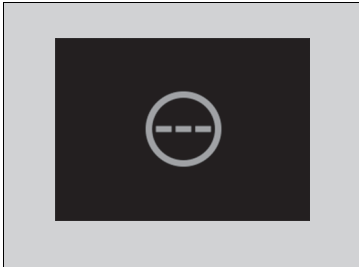
Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera.
Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 348

The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the (white) may appear.



Traffic Sign Recognition System

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 545

Traffic Sign Recognition System

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

➔ **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 540

The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. Just after entering a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, Traffic Sign Recognition System may not work correctly.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

Continued

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

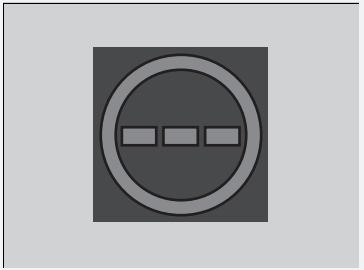
Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

* Not available on all models

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, (amber) appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

■ The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged signs.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

Continued

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

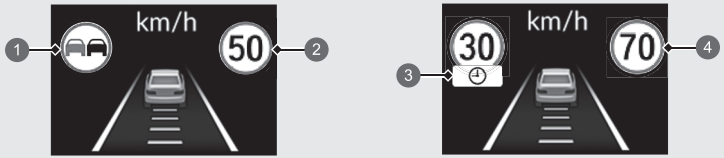
▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

■ Signs Displayed on the Gauge

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on weather (snow, etc.) or specific period of time can appear on either side.

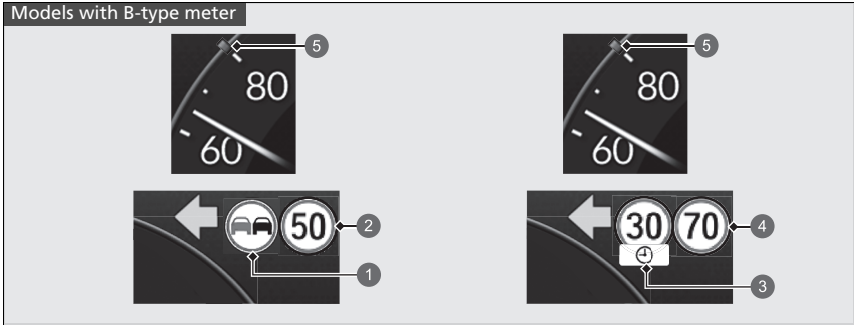
Models with A-type meter



❶ Overtaking Prohibition Sign*1
❷ Speed Limit Sign
❸ Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions*2
❹ Speed Limit Sign

Continued

Models with B-type meter



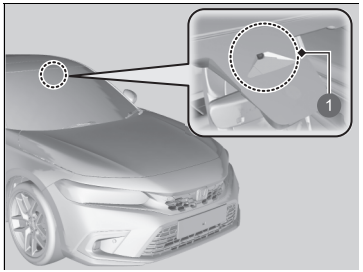
1. Overtaking Prohibition Sign*1
2. Speed Limit Sign
3. Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions*2
4. Speed Limit Sign
5. Speed Limit Sign

Depending on situation, *1 can be replaced with *2, or *2 can appear on the right side.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Traffic Jam Assist, Traffic Sign Recognition System, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate their functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



❶ Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an after market replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Continued

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.

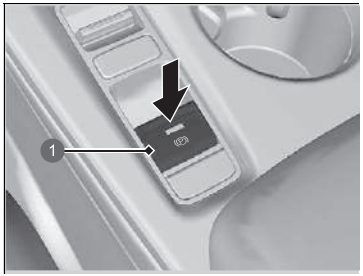
Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch



❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
   - ▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
   - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Continued

Braking

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 673

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

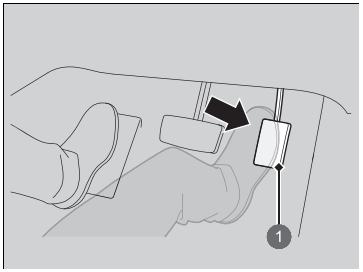
If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

➡ **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 549

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.
Use the accelerator pedal to release the brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

1 Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

To release automatically

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
- ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
- ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
- ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
- ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
- ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature while having your vehicle towed, you can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
- ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
- ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
- ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Continued

Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 555
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 554

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power.
Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down.
To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.
When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

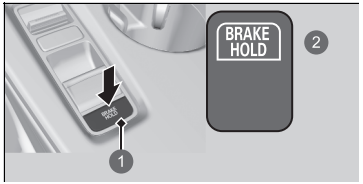
➔ **POWER Gauge** P. 151
➔ **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge** P. 151
➔ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 425

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

Continued

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

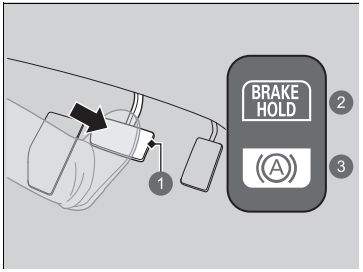
⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ Activating the system



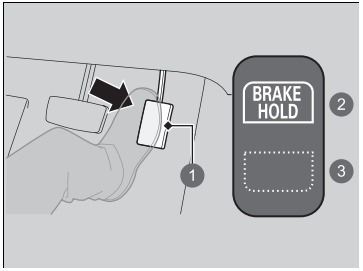
❶ Brake Pedal
❷ On
❸ Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in [P] or [R].

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



❶ Accelerator Pedal
❷ On
❸ Goes Off

Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than [P] or [N]. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.
Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

➡ **When Stopped** P. 557

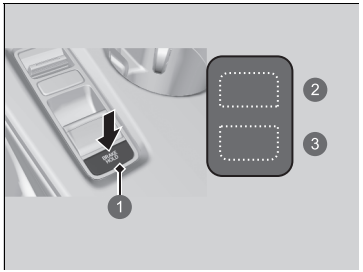
Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the power system is off.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Goes Off
❸ Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:
- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:
- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

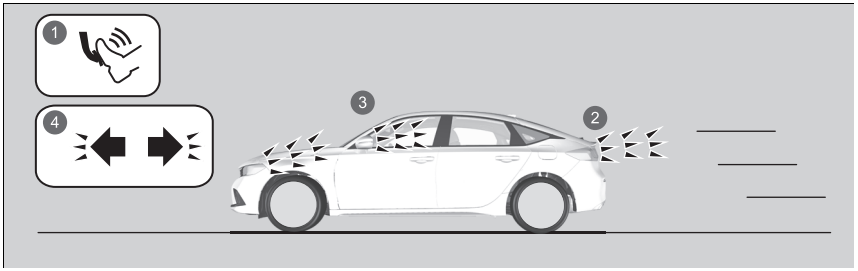
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



1. Hard Braking
2. Brake Lights Come On
3. Hazard Warning Lights Flash
4. Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the shift position to P.
   ▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.
4. Turn off the power system.

Always set the parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to P before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

Continued

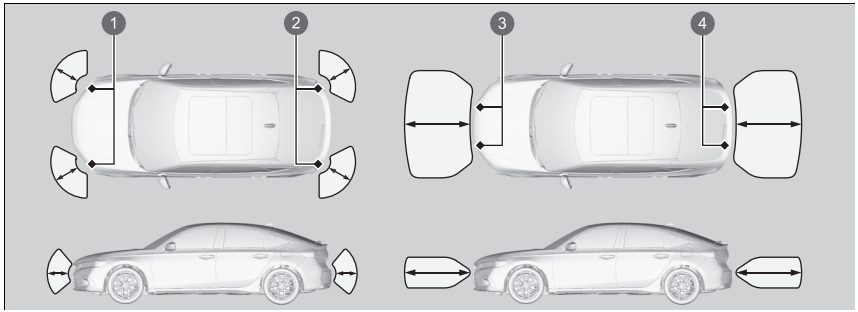
When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



❶ Front Corner Sensors
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

Continued

Parking Sensor System

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

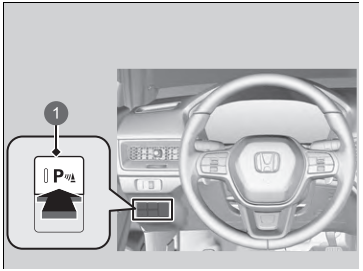
The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Any accessories have been put on or around the sensors.
  ▶ If you put any accessories on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.
  ➡ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 563

The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Parking sensor system on and off



1 Parking Sensor System Button

With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

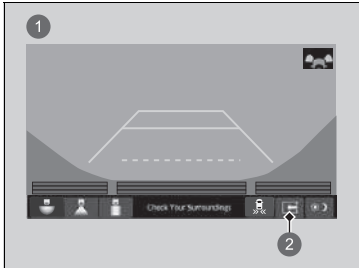
The front corner, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

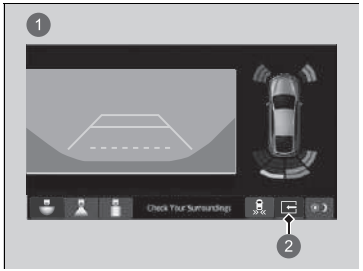
Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

Screen Operation



❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab



❶ Split View On
❷ Split Screen Tab

You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

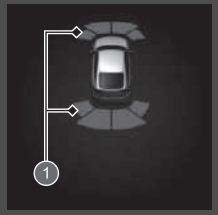
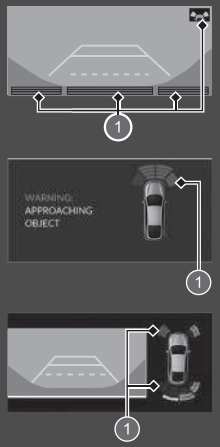
Screen Operation

The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:

- If there is a malfunction in the system.

Continued

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/Information Screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors			
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm (39-23 inches) Rear: About 110-60 cm (43-23 inches)	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Yellow*3		
Short	About 60-45 cm (23-17 inches)	About 60-45 cm (23-17 inches)	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Amber		
Very short	About 45-35 cm (17-13 inches)	About 45-35 cm (17-13 inches)			
Continuous	About 35 cm (13 inches) or less	About 35 cm (13 inches) or less	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Red		

*1:On the driver information interface
*2:On the audio/information screen
*3:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
▶ The indicator in the button turns off.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

3. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.

4. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
▶ The beeper sounds once.

5. While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again. To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you put the transmission into R, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Cross Traffic Monitor

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

Cross Traffic Monitor

⚠WARNING

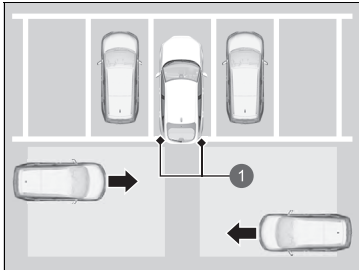
Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 567
  ➡ **Customized Features** P. 348
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

1 Radar sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Continued

Cross Traffic Monitor

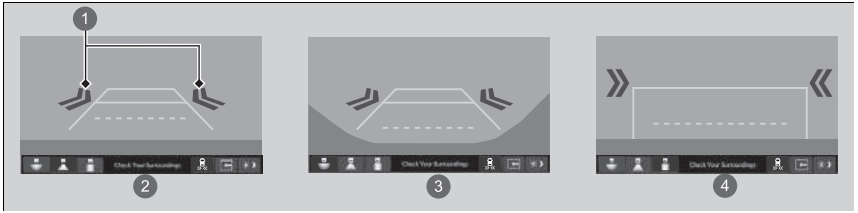
Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h (6 mph) and 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

When the System Detects a Vehicle



1. Arrow Icon
2. Normal View
3. Wide View
4. Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

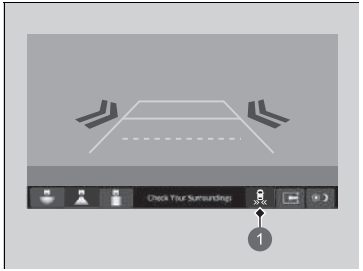
When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the on the lower right changes to in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in R, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



❶ Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

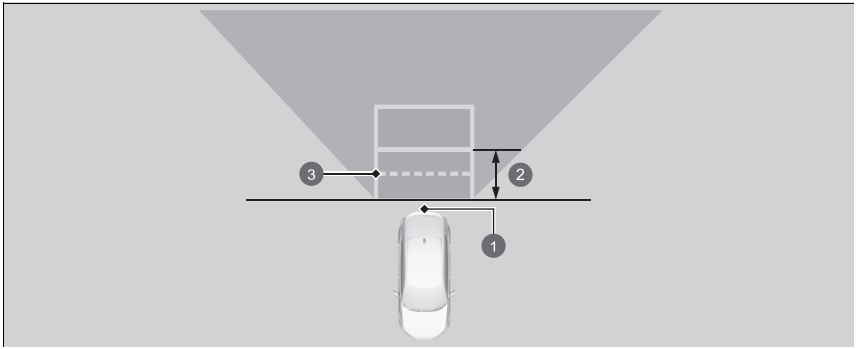
You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 348

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



1. Camera
2. Approx. 1 metre (39 inches)
3. Approx. 50 cm (19 inches)

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

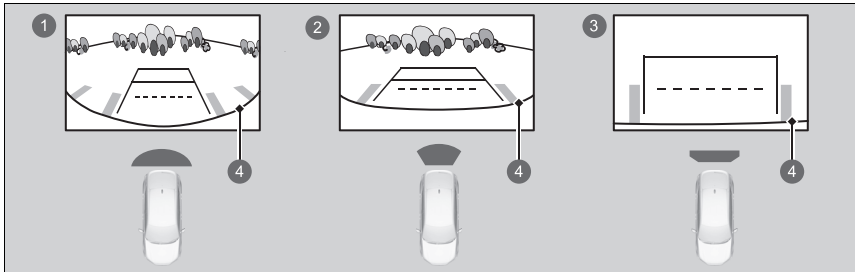
Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
Customized Features P. 348

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.



1. Wide View Mode
2. Normal View Mode
3. Top Down View Mode
4. Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher.
If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

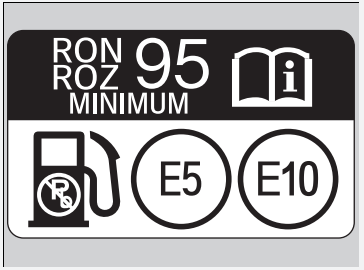
■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L (8.8 Imp gal)

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

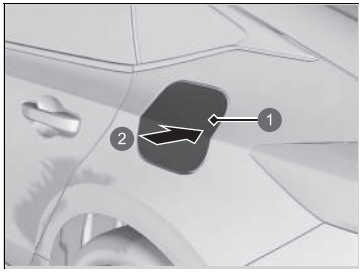
- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems



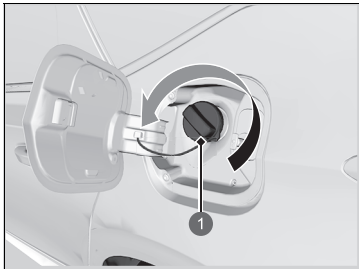
Oxygenated Fuels

Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or ether compounds. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN 228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.

How to Refuel



❶ Fuel fill door
❷ Press



❶ Cap

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn the power system off.
3. Unlock the driver's door.
   ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
5. Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.
6. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
7. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
8. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
   ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

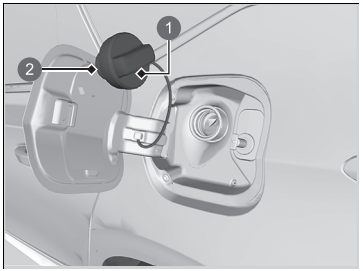
- **Stop the power system, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.
The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Continued



❶ Cap
❷ Holder

9. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet. On vehicles without service reminder system*, follow the Maintenance schedule*.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 587

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil P. 595
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Miles driven	÷	Gallons of fuel	=	Miles per Gallon		

* Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 576
Safety When Performing Maintenance 577
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 578
About Your Maintenance Service.... 579
Service Reminder System* 580
Maintenance Schedule* 587
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .. 592
Opening the Bonnet 593
Recommended Engine Oil 595
Oil Check 597
Adding Engine Oil 598
Cooling System 599
Transmission Fluid 602
Brake Fluid 603
Refilling Window Washer Fluid..... 605
Fuel Filter 606
Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder . 606
Replacing Light Bulbs 607
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 615
Checking and Maintaining Tyres
Checking Tyres 618
Wear Indicators..... 619
Tyre Service Life 620
Tyre and Wheel Replacement..... 620
Tyre Rotation 621
Snow Traction Devices 622
12-Volt Battery
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Remote Battery 629
Climate Control System Maintenance
Cleaning
Interior Care 634
Exterior Care..... 636
Accessories and Modifications 639

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the service information available for your vehicle /maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 587

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➔ **Brake Fluid** P. 603
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 618
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➔ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 607
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 615

* Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/service information available for your vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

About Your Maintenance Service

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the driver information interface when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service information available for your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

Service Reminder System* P. 580

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book* that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book*, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 587

About Your Maintenance Service

Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

* Not available on all models

Service Reminder System*

Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON.

Service Reminder System*

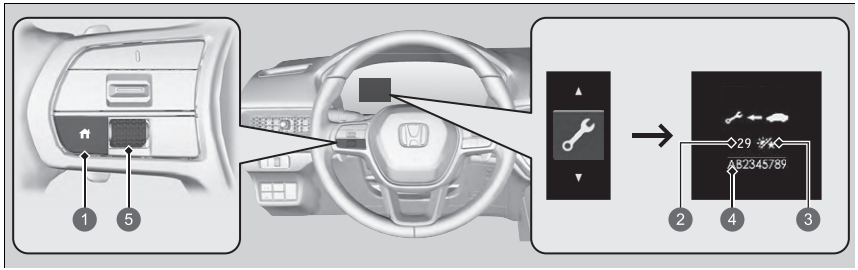
You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the driver information interface.

* Not available on all models

Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Models with A-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the service reminder information screen. The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Remaining Days
❸ Day Icon
❹ Maintenance Item Code(s)
❺ Left Selector Wheel

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the service reminder information.

Continued

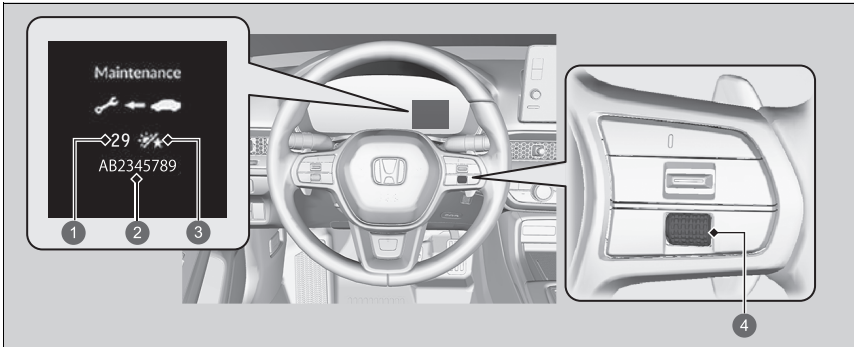
Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.

Models with B-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.

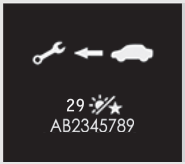
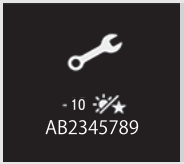
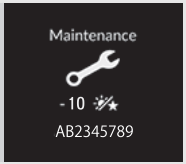
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the service reminder information screen is displayed.The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



1. Remaining Days
2. Maintenance Item Code(s)
3. Day Icon
4. Right Selector Wheel

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the service reminder information.

Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Icon	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
Service Due Soon	*1  *2	One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	The remaining days will be counted down per day.
Service Due Now	*1 *2	One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.
Service Over Due	*1  *2 	The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder system.

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

Continued

Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the driver information interface are in code and icon. For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service information available for your vehicle.

Availability of the Service Reminder System

Even if the service reminder information appears on the driver information interface while pressing the (home) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service information available for your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.

Availability of the Service Reminder System

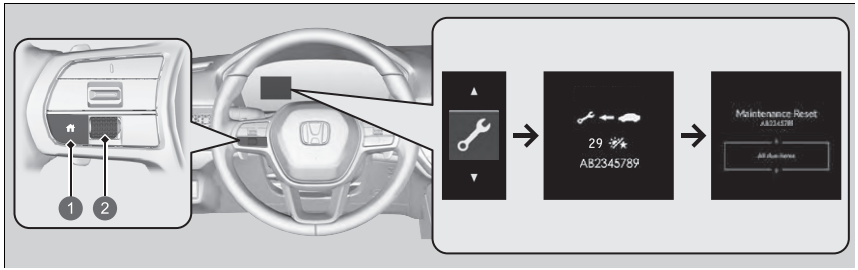
If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.

Models with A-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the service reminder information screen.
5. Press and hold the left selector wheel until the reset mode is displayed.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to select the item you want to reset (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
   ▶ To reset all items simultaneously, select **All Due Items**.
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
8. Repeat from step 5 for other items you wish to reset.



1. (home) Button
2. Left Selector Wheel

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can also reset the service reminder system information display using the audio/information screen.

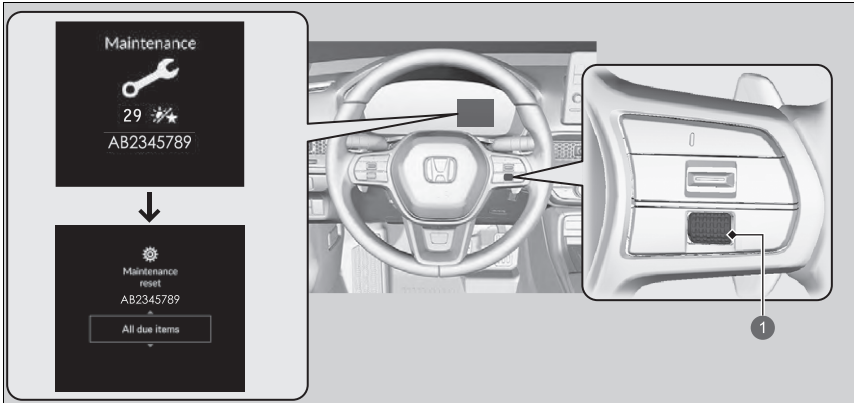
Customized Features P. 348

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself.

Continued

Models with B-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the service reminder information screen is displayed.
3. Press and hold the right selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
4. Roll the right selector wheel to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All due items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
5. Press the right selector wheel to reset the selected item.
6. Repeat from step 3 for other items you wish to reset.



1 Right Selector Wheel

Maintenance Schedule*

Maintenance information for your vehicle can be found with the service information for your vehicle (if available). If service information is not available, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km (62,000 miles)									

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km (124,000 miles) or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km (62,000 miles) or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	Normal		Every 150,000 km (93,000 miles) or 6 years									
	Severe		Every 75,000 km (46,500 miles) or 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank	Normal		Every 180,000 km (111,500 miles)									
	Severe		Every 110,000 km (68,000 miles)*1									
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle			Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km (5 miles) per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km (10 miles) per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Towing trailer, driving with a loaded car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

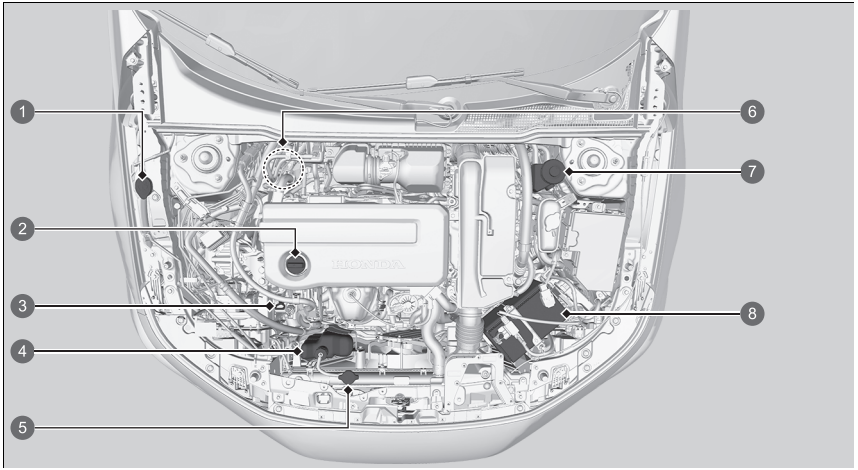
NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under “severe” conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

Maintenance Record (on vehicles without separate service record)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

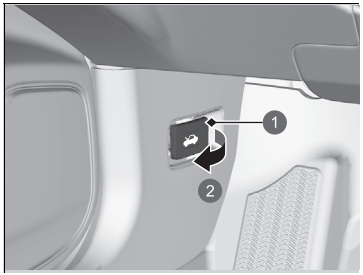
	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)			

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



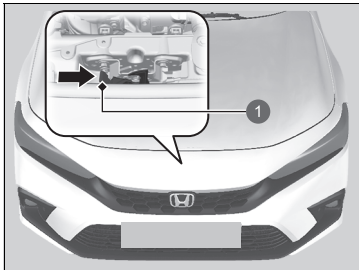
1. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
2. Engine Oil Fill Cap
3. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
4. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
5. Radiator Cap
6. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
7. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
8. 12-Volt Battery

Opening the Bonnet



❶ Bonnet Release Handle
❷ Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



❶ Lever

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

⚠WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

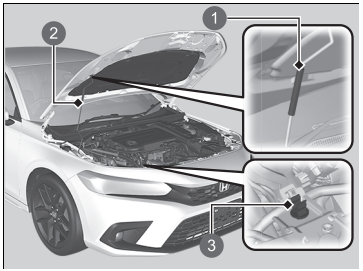
NOTICE
Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

NOTICE
Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Continued

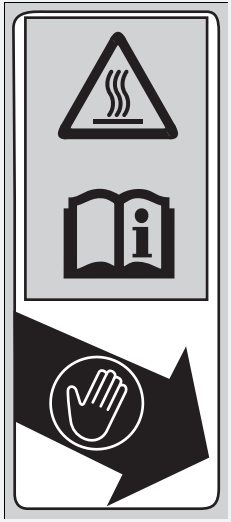


❶ Grip
❷ Support Rod
❸ Clamp

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm (12 inches) and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet



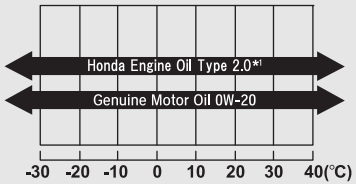
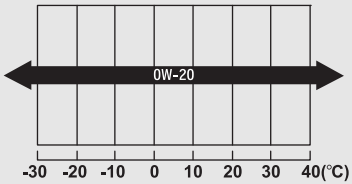
- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Except Israel and Turkish models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Engine OIL Type 2.0 • Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• ACEA C5
 Ambient Temperature	 Ambient Temperature

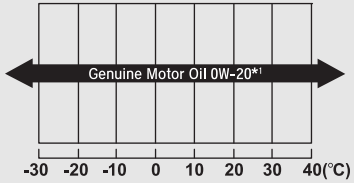
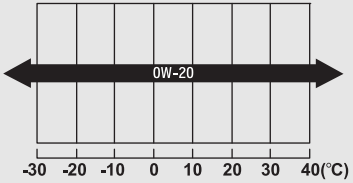
*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Continued

Israel and Turkish models

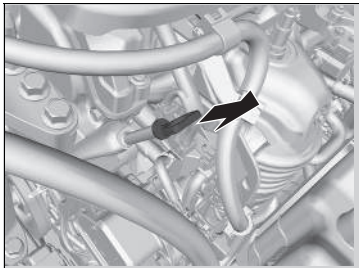
Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• ACEA C5
 Ambient Temperature	 Ambient Temperature

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

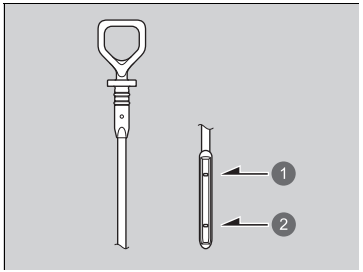
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

5. Reset the Oil Level Check Reminder.
   Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder P. 606

❶ Upper Mark
❷ Lower Mark

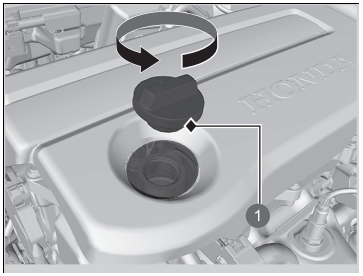
Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles.
Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a Service Reminder System, the Oil Level Check Reminder should also be reset after changing the oil.
Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder P. 606

Adding Engine Oil



1 Engine Oil Fill Cap

1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.
5. Reset the Oil Level Check Reminder.
   ➡ **Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder** P. 606

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Use a neutral detergent to remove it if it spills on the engine cover. Do not use organic solvents such as brake cleaner.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a Service Reminder System, the Oil Level Check Reminder should also be reset after changing the oil.
➡ **Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder** P. 606

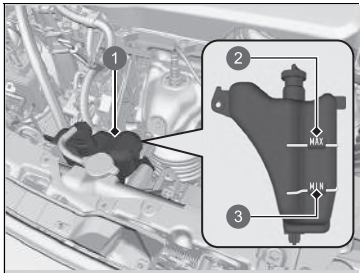
Cooling System

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Continued

Cooling System

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

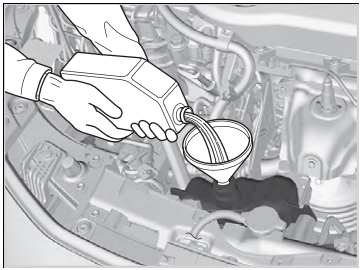
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below –30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

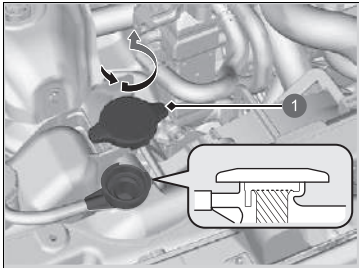
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Radiator



❶ Radiator Cap

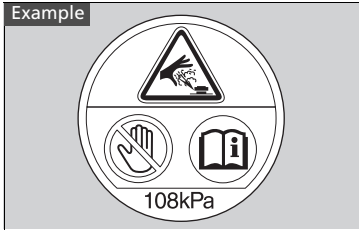
1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HEVF-Type 1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 587

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HEVF-Type 1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HEVF-Type 1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

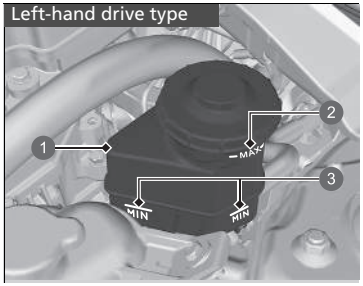
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HEVF-Type 1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

* Not available on all models

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

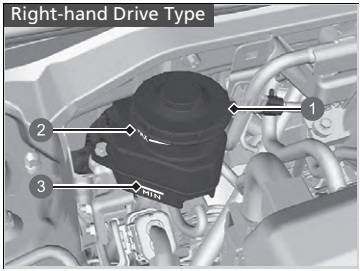
Brake Fluid

NOTICE
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

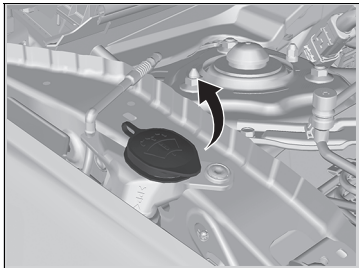
If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Continued



1. Reserve Tank
2. **MAX**
3. **MIN**

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Open the cap and check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Resetting Oil Level Check Reminder

Reset the Oil Level Check Reminder if you have checked the oil level. You can reset the Oil Level Check Reminder using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 348

Fuel Filter

Models with service reminder system

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Active Cornering Lights*

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

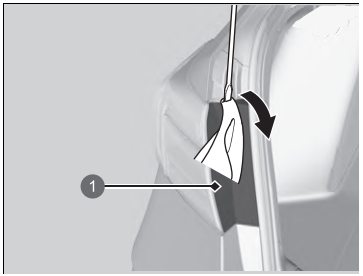
The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

* Not available on all models

Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

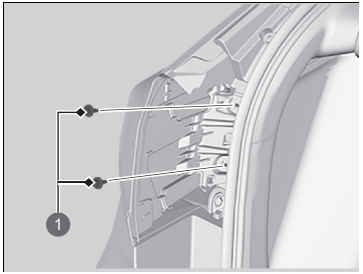
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1 Cover

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

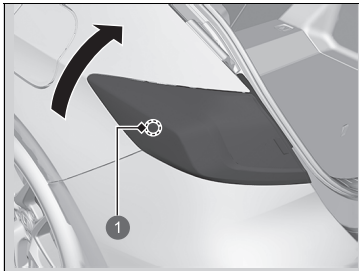


1 Bolts

2. Unscrew the bolts.

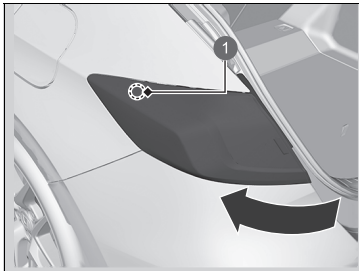
Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake light and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



❶ Lower Snap Pin

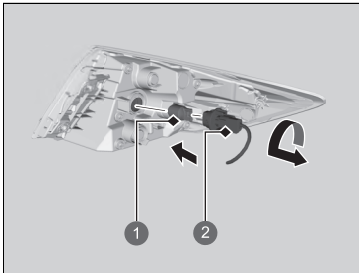
3. Grasp underneath the taillight and rotate it upward to release the lower snap pin.



❶ Upper Snap Pin

4. Rotate the taillight outward to release the upper snap pin.
5. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.

Continued



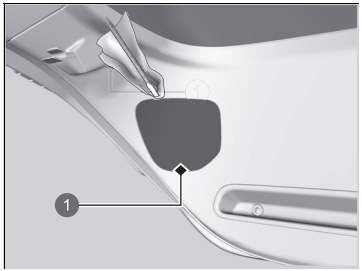
1 Bulb
2 Socket

6. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
7. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
8. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

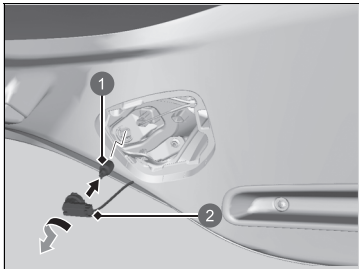
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Back-Up Light: 16 W



❶ Cover

1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



❶ Bulb
❷ Socket

2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
   Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Fog Light

Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

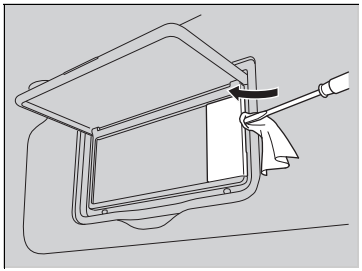
■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs

Models with A-type meter

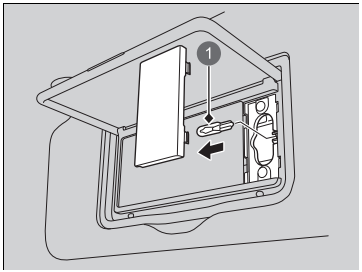
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



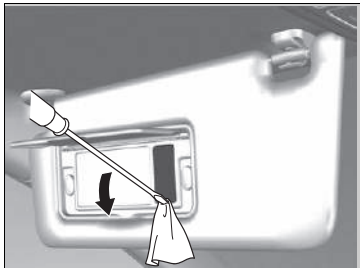
❶ Bulb

Models with B-type meter

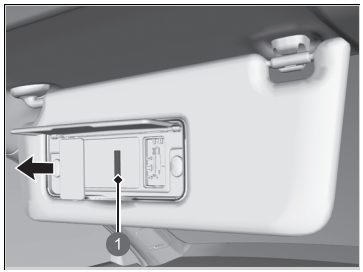
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



❶ Bulb

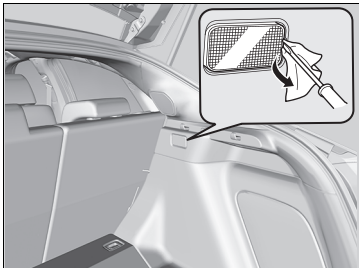
Continued

■ Luggage Area Light Bulb

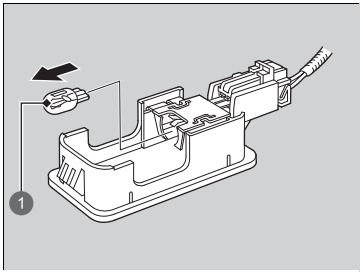
When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light:	5 W

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

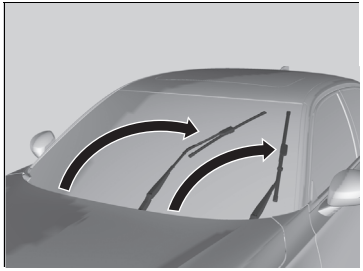


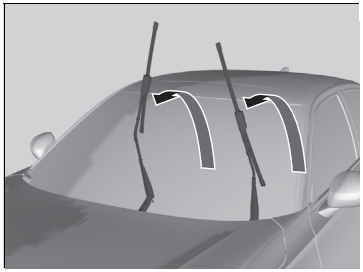
❶ Bulb

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade





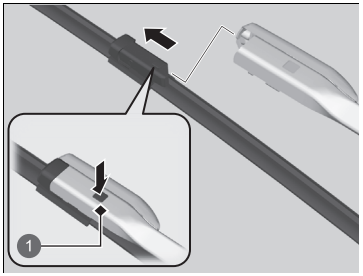
1. Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.
   ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

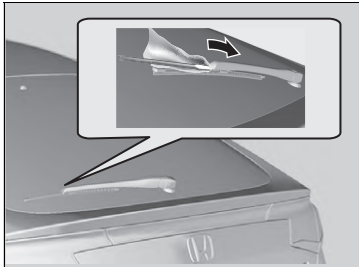
Continued



❶ Tab

4. Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
6. Lower both wiper arms.
7. Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
▶ The wiper arms return to the standard position.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade



1. Hold up the wiper arm.
2. Insert a flat tip screwdriver into the groove of the wiper arm to remove the wiper blade.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.
3. Insert a new wiper blade and put the wiper arm back.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 619
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

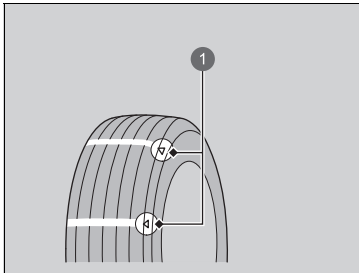
Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.
➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 457

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Wear Indicators



❶ Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm (about 1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

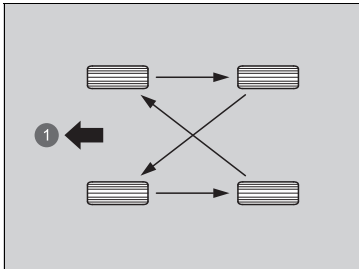
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

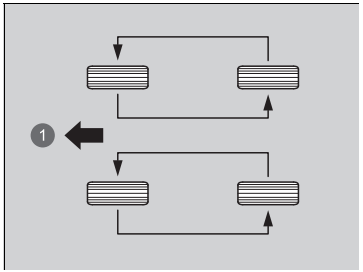
■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

❶ Front

■ Tyres with rotation marks

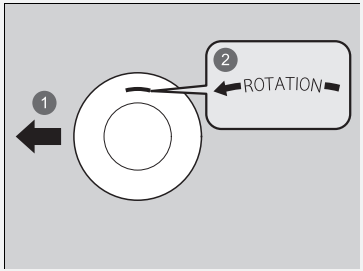


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

❶ Front

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



❶ Front
❷ Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyre pressure is rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 457

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EU legislation for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
215/50R17 95W	**RUD-matic CLASSIC 48489**
235/40ZR18 95Y	**AUTO TRUCK 0154705**

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

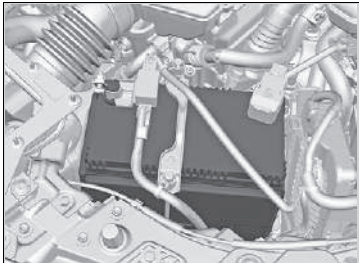
Snow Traction Devices

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  Reactivating the audio system P. 287
- The clock resets.
  Clock P. 194

Right-hand Drive Type

- The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  Immobilizer System Indicator P. 125

12-Volt Battery

WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Safety Support, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System indicators may come on when you turn the power mode to on after reconnecting a 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

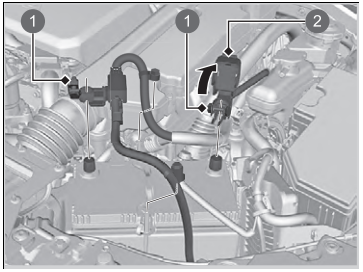
* Not available on all models

European and Turkish models

Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

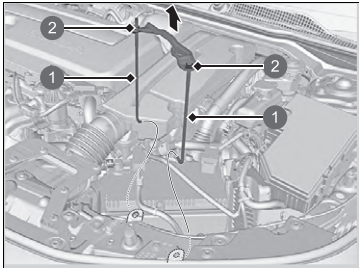
When you remove and replace the 12-volt battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

Maintenance Safety P. 577
Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 624



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Open the bonnet.
2. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (–) terminal.
3. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.

❶ Nut
❷ Cover



4. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.

❶ Stay
❷ Nut

Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

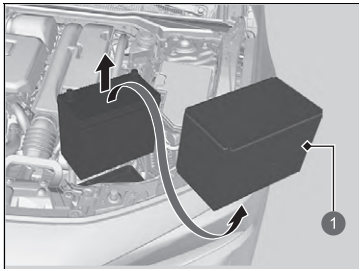
NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.



1 Battery cover

6. Remove the battery cover.
7. Take out the battery carefully.

Battery Label

Example

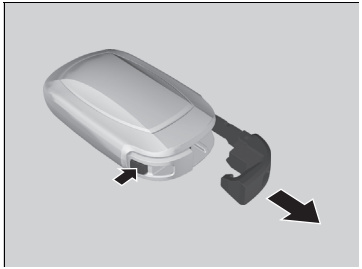
Battery Label

DANGER

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

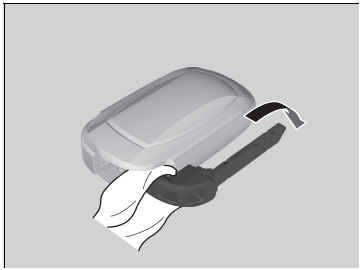
Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with key grip.
- ▶ Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

Continued

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

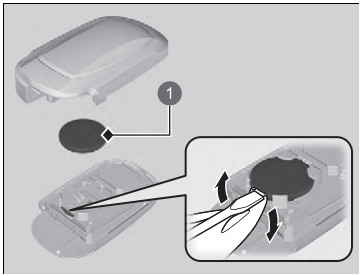
CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

European and Turkish models

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Air Conditioning

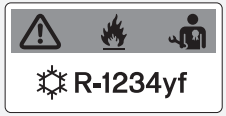
NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 110
➔ **Specifications** P. 698



: Caution
: Flammable Refrigerant
: Requires a qualified technician to service
: Air Conditioning System

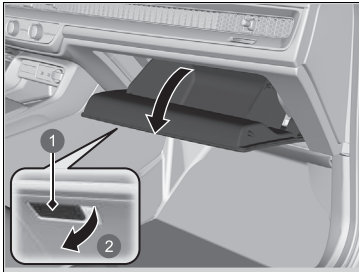
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 587

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

❶ Handle
❷ Pull

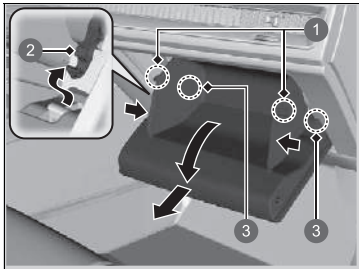
Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

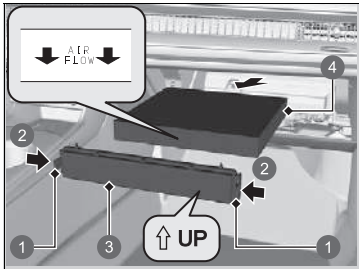
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

* Not available on all models



❶ Tabs
❷ Stopper
❸ Claws

2. Push the stopper on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.
5. Remove the glove box by pulling out the claws.



❶ Tabs
❷ Push
❸ Cover
❹ Dust and Pollen Filter

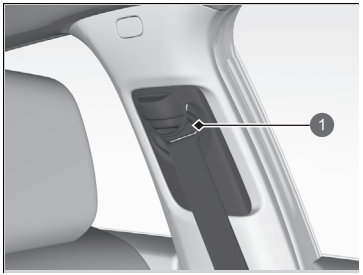
6. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
7. Remove the filter from the case.
8. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Opening

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front wide view camera and the rainfall/light sensor.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

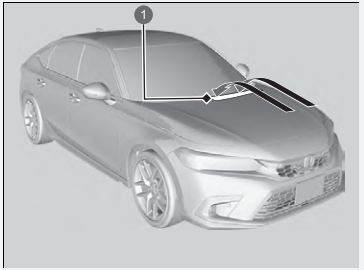
■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



1 Air Intake Vents

Lock the doors when washing the vehicle.
Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

➡ **Changing the Front Wiper Blade** P. 615

Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Continued

Using an Automated Car Wash

When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure the transmission in N position.

➡ **If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode)** P. 423

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on the sides of the rear seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 686
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.
A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.
Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda highvoltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

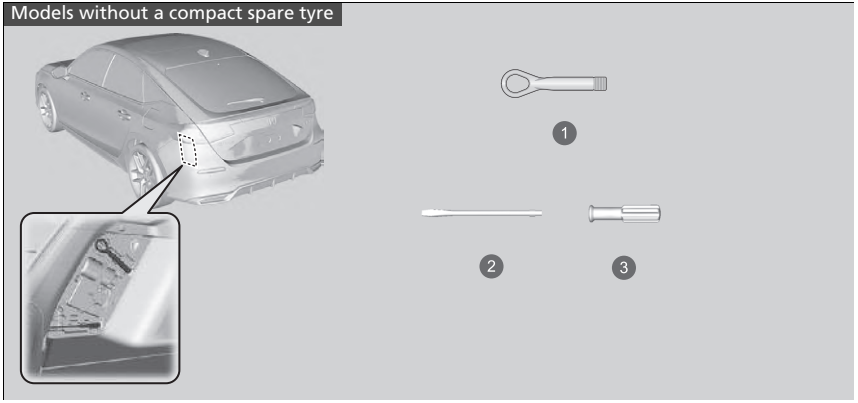
Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 642
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 644
Models with a compact spare tyre
Changing a Flat Tyre 657
Handling of the Jack
Power System Won't Start
Checking the Procedure 668
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 670
Emergency Power System On 671
Emergency Power System Off 672
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 673
Overheating 676
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears 678
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 679
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 680
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 681
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 682
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 683
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks..... 684
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message... 685
Fuses 686
Emergency Towing 693
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door .. 694
If You Cannot Open the Hatch 695

Types of Tools

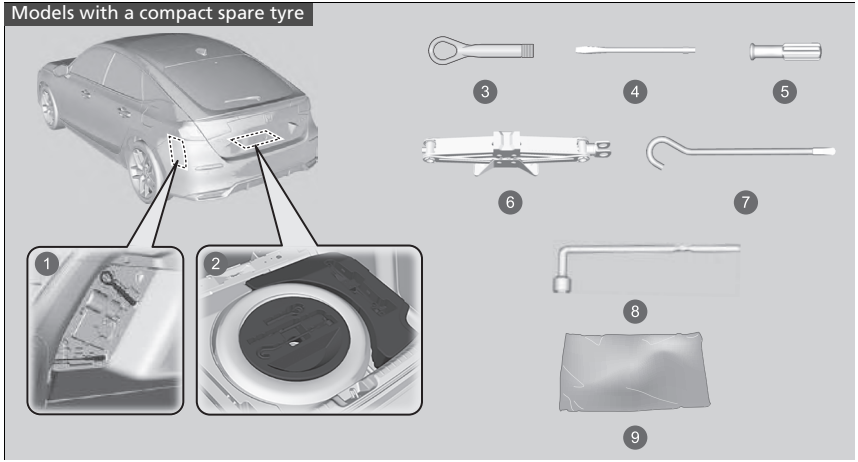
Models without a compact spare tyre



1. Detachable Towing Hook
2. Flat-tip Screwdriver
3. Grip

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.



1. Left Side of the Luggage Area
2. Tool Case
3. Detachable Towing Hook
4. Flat-tip Screwdriver
5. Grip
6. Jack
7. Jack Handle Bar
8. Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle
9. Storage Bag

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

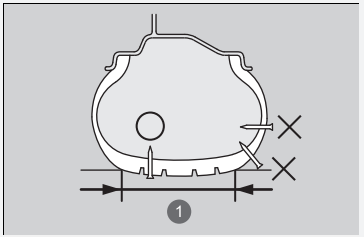
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



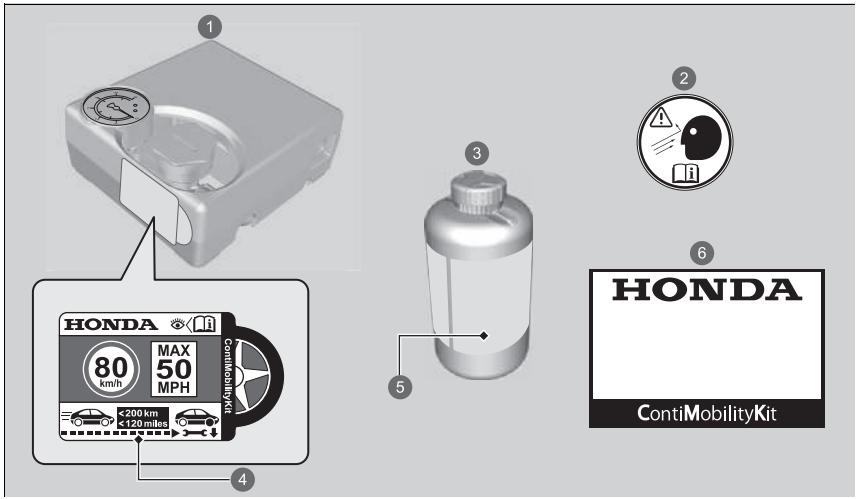
1 Contact Area

When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



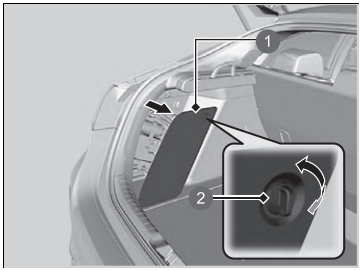
1. Air Compressor
2. Wheel Label
3. Sealant Bottle
4. Speed Restriction Label
5. Expiration Date
6. Handling Manual

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

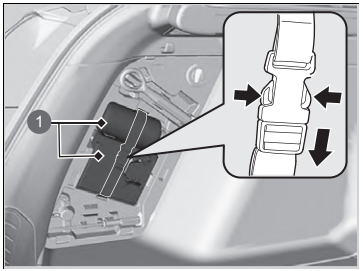
Speed restriction label are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Continued



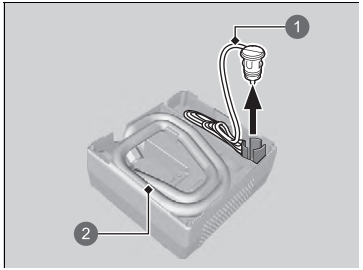
❶ Lid
❷ Knob



❶ Tyre Repair Kit

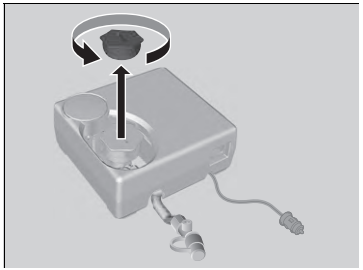
1. Remove the lid on left side of the luggage area by rotating the knob, then take the kit out from inside.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Plug Cord
2. Air Compressor Hose

1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.



2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

Injecting Sealant and Air

WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

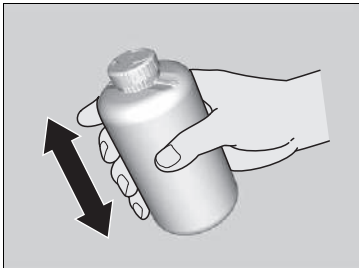
For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

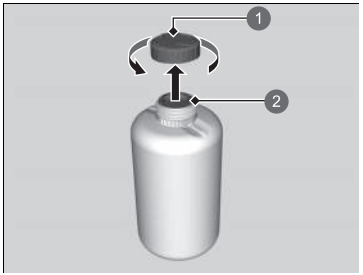
In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it by keeping the bottle in the passenger compartment before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.

Continued



3. Shake the bottle well.



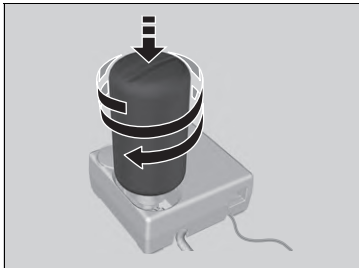
❶ Bottle Cap
❷ Not Removed

4. Remove the bottle cap.
▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.

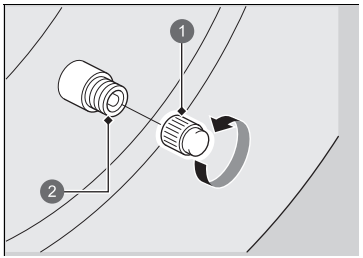
Injecting Sealant and Air

Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.



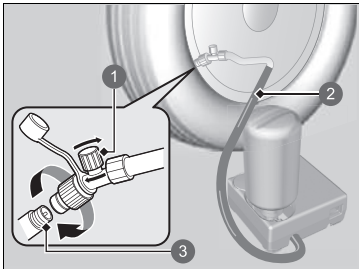
5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
▶ Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.



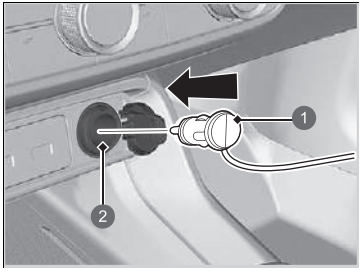
6. Unscrew the valve cap.

❶ Valve Cap
❷ Valve

Continued



1 Air Valve
2 Air Compressor Hose
3 Valve



1 Plug
2 Accessory Power Socket

7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
▶ Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
➔ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 272

9. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 109

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

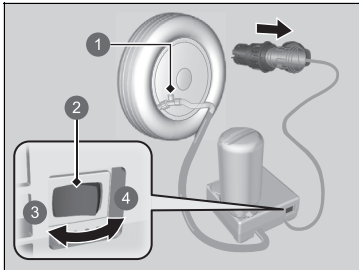
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.



1. Air Valve
2. Switch
3. OFF
4. ON

10. Turn on the air compressor and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- ▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
- ▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.

12. Unplug the plug from the accessory power socket.

13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
- ▶ Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

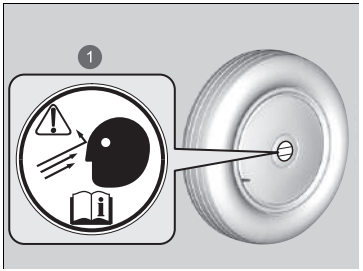
Injecting Sealant and Air

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

Continued

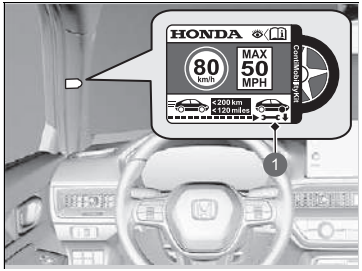


1 Wheel Label

14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

15. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



❶ Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres (2 to 6 miles).
   ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Continued

1. Air Compressor
2. OFF
3. ON

4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

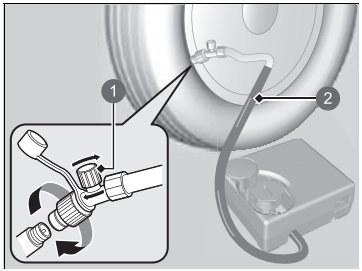
5. If the air pressure is
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air and continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  ➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 693
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  ➔ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 655

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
▶ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres (120 miles).

6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

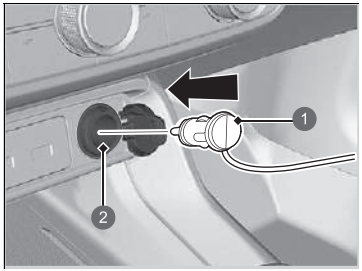
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Air Valve
2. Air Compressor Hose

1. Take the air compressor out of the luggage area.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
   ▶ Make sure the air valve is closed.



1. Plug
2. Accessory Power Socket

5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
   ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
   ➡ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 272
6. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
   ➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 109
   ➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 411

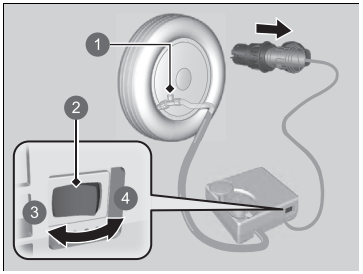
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Continued



1. Air Valve
2. Switch
3. OFF
4. ON

7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
- ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
- ▶ If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.

8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

9. Turn off the kit.
- ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.

10. Turn off the vehicle's power system off, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.

11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

12. Store the air compressor in the luggage area.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Models with a compact spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h (50 mph). Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

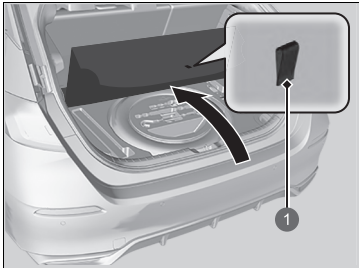
Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

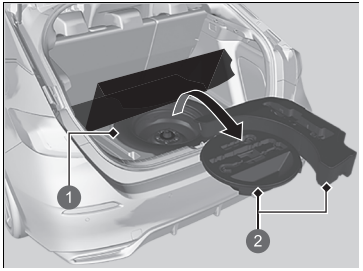
Continued

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Pull the strap on the floor lid and open the lid.

❶ Strap



2. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
3. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.

❶ Spare Tyre
❷ Tool Case

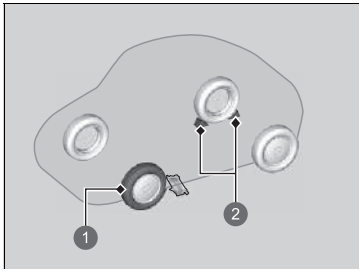
Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

NOTICE

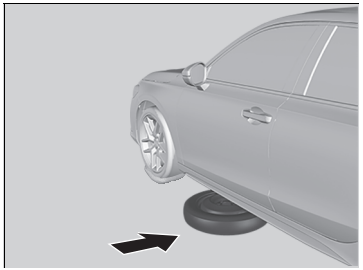
Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.



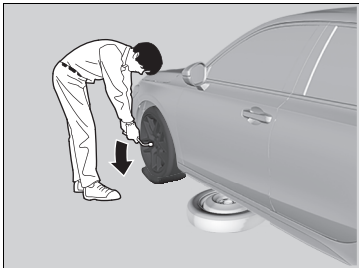
1. The tyre to be replaced.
2. Wheel Blocks

5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



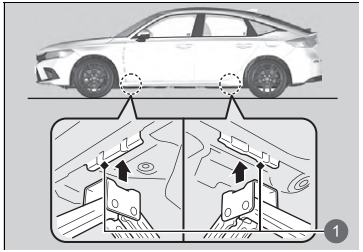
6. Place the compact spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.

Continued



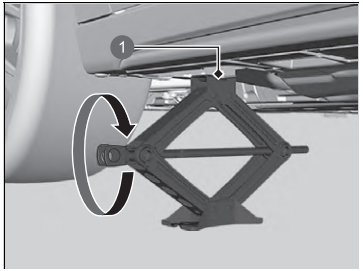
7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

How to Set Up the Jack



❶ Jacking Points

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.



❶ Jacking Point

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

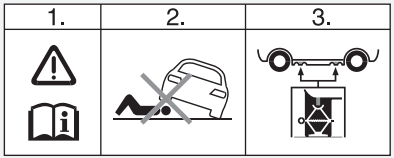
WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

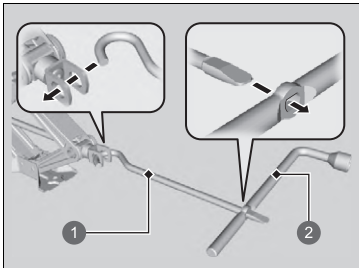
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

Continued



1 Jack Handle Bar
2 Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

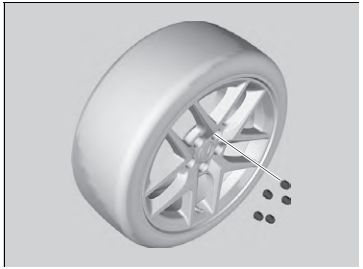
How to Set Up the Jack

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

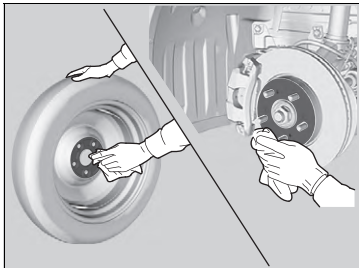
Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the power system on.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

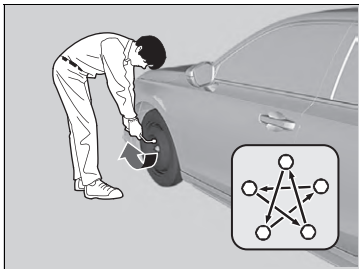
Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



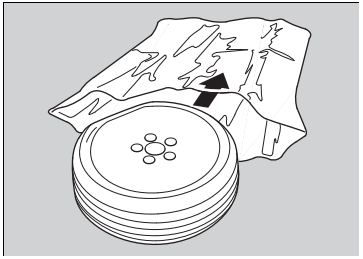
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Continued

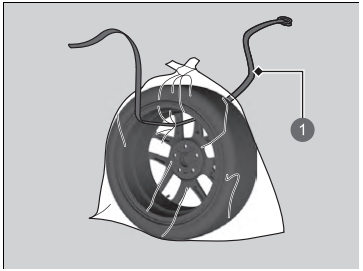
Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Put the flat tyre in the storage bag provided with your vehicle.
   ▶ The storage bag is in the tool case.
2. Knot the top of the storage bag.
3. Securely put the jack, jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case.



4. Bore through the bag, and pass the holding belt through the hole of the bag and the wheel of the flat tyre as shown.

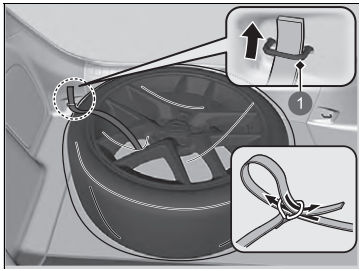
1 Belt

Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.



❶ Rear Anchorage

5. Place the flat tyre in the luggage area, and thread the belt through the rear anchorage as shown.

6. Pass the belt through the ring, and tighten the belt to secure the flat tyre in place.

Continued

■ Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre

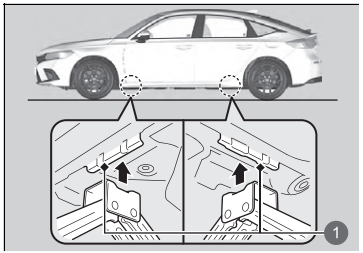
If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometers (miles), **Tyre pressure monitor system problem** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 458

Models without a compact spare tyre

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



1 Jacking Points

Checking the Procedure

When the (Ready) indicator does not come on, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checking the Procedure

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 673

Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily start the power system using the emergency start procedure.

Emergency Power System Off P. 672

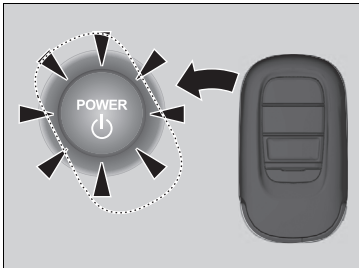
Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	**Temperature too low for vehicle to operate** appears.	• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location. • Contact a dealer if necessary.
	To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote appears.	**If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 670
	The (Power System) indicator comes on.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	The transmission system indicator blinks and **Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked.** message appears.	**If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message** P. 685

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Put the transmission into P.
Check the power system starting procedure. Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again.		➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 411
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 210 ➡ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 125
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 690
Check the 12-volt battery.		Have the 12-volt battery checked by a dealer. ➡ **12-Volt Battery** P. 624

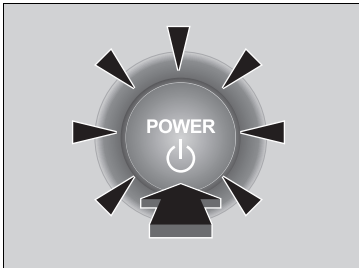
If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the (Ready) indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
▶ The **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **POWER** button changes from flashing to on.
▶ The (Ready) indicator comes on.
▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system can not be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency start procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The gear position automatically changes to P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

Emergency Power System Off

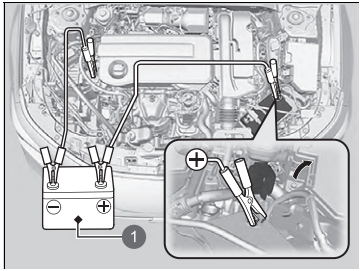
NOTICE

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1 Booster Battery

1. Open the cover on the positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

Continued

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

⚠WARNING

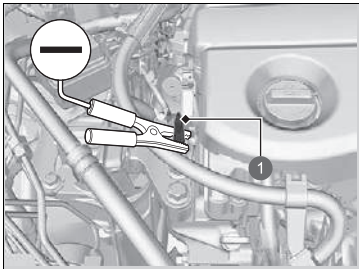
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



1 Stud Bolt

4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Safety Support, Collision Mitigation Braking System, Road Departure Mitigation, Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System indicators may come on when you turn the power mode to on after reconnecting a 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface.
- **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced. Appears on the Driver Information Interface

Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced. appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
   ▶ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into P. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
   ▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool. Appears on the Driver Information Interface

First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
   ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
   ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

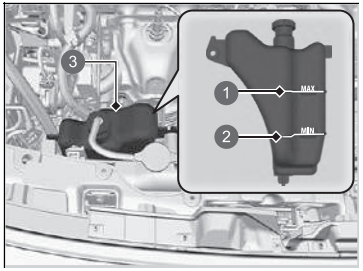
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

If **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

■ Next thing to do



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.
If **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Turn the power system off, and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

➡ **Oil Check** P. 597

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low** warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds:
Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Reduced Stopping Power Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

- Comes on when there is no petrol in the fuel tank, and goes off after vehicle is refueled, power mode is turned on, vehicle is driven, and the power system is turned off multiple times. If it does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (31 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

(Red)

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 683

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

(Red)

(Amber)

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.**
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 547

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.

- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.
If the compact spare tyre* is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.
Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

If the compact spare tyre* causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 457

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.
If the compact spare tyre* causes the indicator to first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a full- size tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

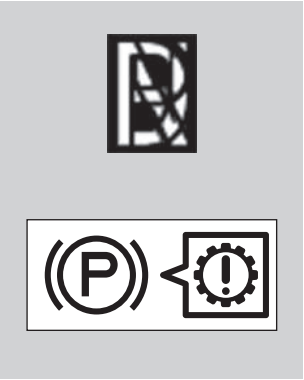
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

* Not available on all models

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message



■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

The transmission is malfunctioning.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

•Immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

You may not be able to turn on the power system.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

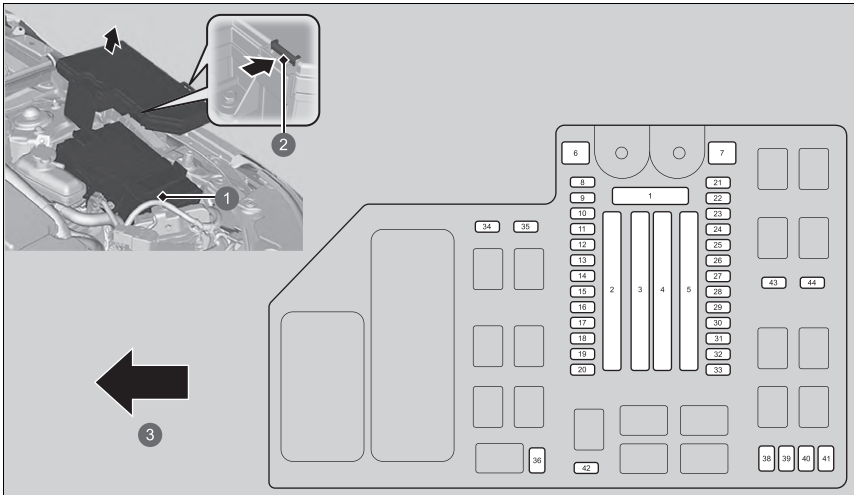
➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 693

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



1. Fuse Box
2. Tab
3. Front

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

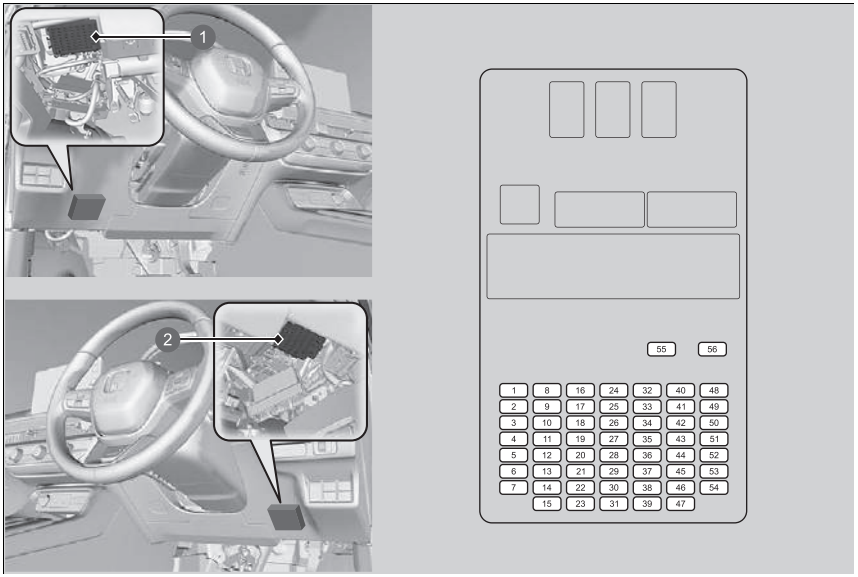
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Battery	175 A
2	–	–
	–	–
	Fuse Box Option	60 A
	–	–
	Fuse Box Option2	40 A
	–	–
	Fuse Box Main	60 A
3	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	Rear Defroster	40 A
	A/C PTC1	40 A
	Blower Motor	40 A
	A/C PTC2	40 A
4	ESB	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	RFC	40 A
	P-ACT Motor	30 A
	IG Main	30 A
	–	–
	Relay Module2	30 A
5	Option6	30 A
	Front Wiper	30 A
	EPS	70 A
	Relay Module1	30 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	ENG WATER PUMP	40 A
	Fuse Box Main2	40 A
6	–	–
7	IG Main2	30 A
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	AUDIO SUB	7.5 A
11	–	–
12	–	–
13	Heated Steering*	(10 A)
14	BATT IR	10 A
15	Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)
16	–	–
17	Washer	15 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	BACKUP	15 A
20	AUDIO	15 A
21	IGP	15 A
22	BACKUP FI-ECU	10 A
23	DBW	15 A
24	RFC Relay	7.5 A
25	PCU EWP	7.5 A
26	P-ACT ECU	7.5 A
27	LCM L	15 A
28	INJ	15 A
29	Stop Lights	10 A
30	LCM R	15 A
31	IG Coil	15 A
32	EVTC	20 A
33	Hazard	15 A
34	SHIFTER	7.5 A
35	–	–
36	MON2	7.5 A
38	IGB	10 A
39	IGA	15 A
40	–	–
41	IGPS(LAF)	10 A
42	ESB	7.5 A
43	–	–
44	–	–

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



❶ Fuse Box (Left-hand Drive Type)
❷ Fuse Box (Right-hand Drive Type)

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

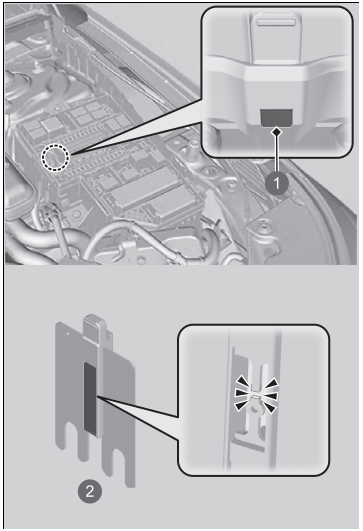
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Driver's Side Power Window	20 A
2	Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
3	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
4	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
5	Option	10 A
6	SRS	10 A
7	Hatch MTR	10 A
8	–	–
9	Front Accessory Socket	20 A
10	Door Lock	20 A
11	METER	10 A
12	Option3 (ST CUT)	10 A
13	Option2 (RR WIP)	(10 A)
14	Option6 (VB SOL)	10 A
15	Driver's Door Unlock	10 A
16	Panoramic Roof*	20 A
17	SBW1	10 A
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	Rear Fog Light	10 A
21	Cargo Accessory Socket	20 A

* Not available on all models

	Circuit Protected	Amps
22	keyless access system	10 A
23	Driver's Door Lock	10 A
24	SBW2	7.5 A
25	IMG	10 A
26	SRS	10 A
27	ST CUT RLY	20 A
28	Option5	10 A
29	Fuel Pump	15 A
30	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
31	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	–	–
35	–	–
36	Option3 (SUNSHADE)*	20 A
37	IGA2	15 A
38	–	–
39	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
40	Driver's Power Seat (REC / RR H)*	(20 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
41	Driver's Power Seat (SLIDE / FR HI)*	(20 A)
42	–	(10 A)
43	AIRCON	10 A
44	Daytime Running Lights	10 A
45	ACC	10 A
46	ACC KEY LOCK	10 A
47	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
48	Front Seat Heaters	20 A
49	Passenger's Power Seat (REC)*	(20 A)
50	Driver's Power Seat Lumbar Support	10 A
51	Passenger's Power Seat Lumbar Support*	10 A
52	–	(20 A)
53	Passenger's Power Seat (SLIDE)*	(20 A)
54	Option1 / Fuel Lid	10 A
55	AUDIO AMP*	(30 A)
56	–	(30 A)

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



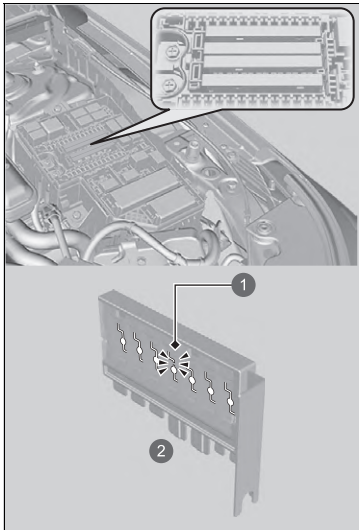
❶ Hole
❷ Main Fuse

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
▶ Look at the fuse through the hole.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

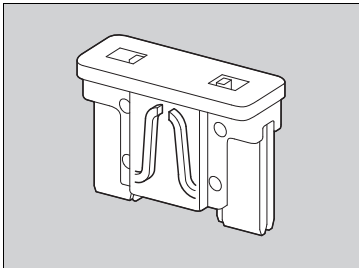
Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.
➡ **Fuse Locations** P. 686
Replace a fuse with a fuse of the same specified amperage.



❶ Blown Fuse
❷ Combined Fuse

4. Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.
▶ Look into the space between the fuses.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

Continued



5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it and replace it with a new one.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
➔ **Parking Brake** P. 547

NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

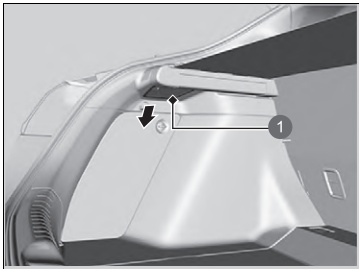
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Right-hand Drive Type
Before towing your vehicle, deactivate the security system's tilt sensor if you have to set the system.
➔ **Tilt Sensor*** P. 214

* Not available on all models

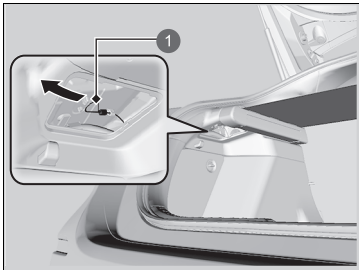
What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the hatch and remove the cover on the left side of luggage area.

1 Cover



2. Pull the release cord toward you.
   ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.
3. Open the fuel fill door.
   ➔ **How to Refuel** P. 571

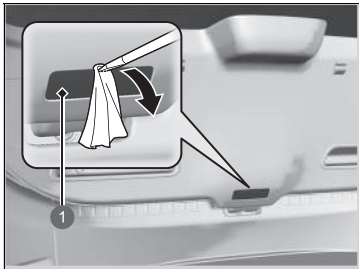
1 Release Cord

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

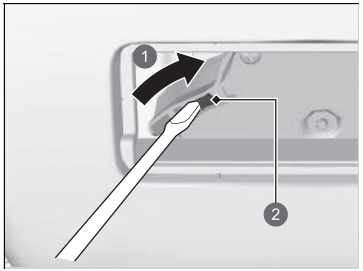
What to Do If Unable to Open the Hatch

If you cannot open the hatch, use the following procedure.



❶ Cover

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the hatch.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



❶ Sliding
❷ Lever

2. To open the hatch, push the hatch while sliding the lever with the flat-tip screw driver.

If You Cannot Open the Hatch

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the hatch from inside, make sure there is enough space around the hatch, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 698
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number..... 701
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 702
Declaration of Conformity Content Outline* 732
Open Source Licence 737

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic
Curb Weight	1,442-1,514 kg (3,179-3,338 lbs)
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb*1 See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*2
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb*1 See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*2

*1: Left-hand drive type
*2: Right-hand drive type

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	81.0 x 96.7 mm (3.19 x 3.81 in)	
Displacement	1,993 cm^3 (121.57 cu-in)	
Compression Ratio	13.9 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7G11Y

Fuel

Type	· EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel · Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40.0L (8.80 Imp gal)

12-Volt Battery

Capacity	36Ah (5) /45Ah (20)

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.5 L (1.32 Imp qt)

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Front Fog Lights*	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake/Tail-lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Rear Fog Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	LED
Ceiling Light	LED
Ambient Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	2 W
Centre Pocket Light	LED
Luggage Area Light	5 W
Glove Box Light	LED

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	435 - 485 g (15.3 - 17.1 oz)*1 445 - 495 g (15.7 - 17.5 oz)*2

*1: Left-hand drive type
*2: Right-hand drive type

Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HEVF-Type 1	
Capacity	Change	2.2 L (1.94 Imp qt)

* Not available on all models

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Honda Engine OIL Type 2.0 Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C5 0W-20	
Capacity	Change	3.7 L (3.3 Imp qt)
	Change including filter	4.0 L (3.5 Imp qt)

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	5.54 L (1.22 Imp gal) (change including the remaining 0.62 L (0.14 Imp gal) in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/50R17 95W*1 235/40ZR18 95Y*2
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*	Size	T125/85D16 99M
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7J*1 18 x 8J*2
Compact Spare*		16 x 4T

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

■ Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	90 dB (A)

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,551 mm (179.2 in)
Width		1,802 mm (70.9 in)
Height		1,408 mm (55.4 in)
Wheelbase		2,734 mm (107.6 in)
Track	Front	1,537 mm (60.5 in)*2 1,547 mm (60.9 in)*1
	Rear	1,576 mm (62.1 in)*2 1,586 mm (62.4 in)*1

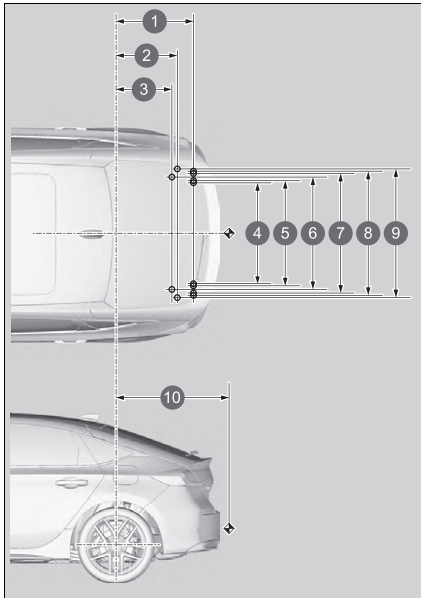
*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device

Dimensions



❶ 662 mm (26.1 in)
❷ 523 mm (20.6 in)
❸ 476 mm (18.7 in)
❹ 915 mm (36.0 in)
❺ 925 mm (36.4 in)
❻ 986 mm (38.8 in)
❼ 1,045 mm (41.1 in)
❽ 1,048 mm (41.3 in)
❾ 1,055 mm (41.5 in)
❿ 965 mm (38.0 in)

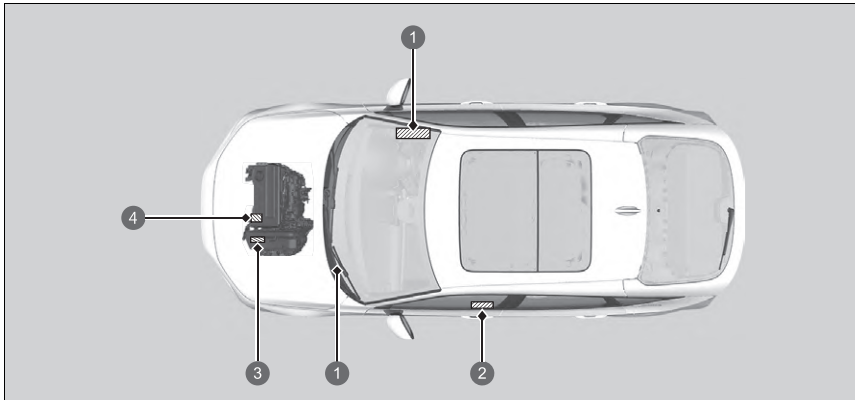
NOTE:
1. ◯ marks show towbar fixing points.
2. ✦ mark shows towbar coupling point.

■ Max. Towing Weight

Trailer with brakes	750 kg (1,654 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	600 kg (1,323 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	75 kg (165 lbs)

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

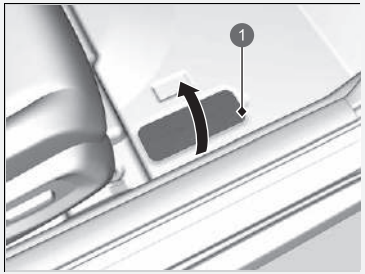
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, Motor Number and transmission number are shown as follows.



1. Vehicle Identification Number*
2. Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number/Engine Number
3. Continuously Variable Transmission Number
3. Motor Number
4. Engine Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



1. Cover

* Not available on all models

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Macedonian, Monaco, Montenegrin, and European except British models

BCM Keyless Access System
http://continental-homologation.com/honda CE Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://continental-homologation.com/honda Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 125KHz Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

* Not available on all models

Macedonian, Monaco, Montenegrin, and European except British models

FOB Keyless Access System
http://continental-homologation.com/honda CE Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://continental-homologation.com/honda Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

Continued

European except British models

Hands-Free Telephone System Display Audio
http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ CE Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/,click “”Declaration of Conformity””, enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest “”DECLARATION of CONFORMITY”” (DoC).Keyword:: Model No.Keyword [*] CL-MH------, CA-9H------,CL-MH1CE0TT,CL-MH1AXYTT,CL-MH1BX1JT,CL-MH1AE6JT,CL-MH1AE0JT,CL-MH1AE2JT,CL-MH1BE0JT,CL-MH1AE8JT,CL-MH1AE9JT,CL-MH1AE3JT,CL-MH1AE7JT,CL-MH1AE5JT,CL-MH1AEAJT You can see “Ref No” in unit label. Intended use: Car Audio System (Bluetooth and WLAN) Postal address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan Manufacturer name: Panasonic Corporation Specifications of Bluetooth Frequency band: 2402 - 2480 MHz Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN Frequency band: 2412 - 2472 MHz Specifications of Bluetooth Maximum output power: 0.1 dBm Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN Maximum output power: 11.9 dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

* Not available on all models

European except British models

Blind spot information System/Cross Traffic Monitor
https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory CE Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation. https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory Intended use: 24 GHz Short Range Radar Sensor Postal address: 26545 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034 United States of America Operational frequency band: 24.05 - 24.25 GHz Maximum Output Power: 13 dBm peak Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe LTD. - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

Continued

European except British models

Telematics Control Unit
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ CE Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ Intended use: Telematics and Wi-Fi Hotspot device for Vehicle Postal address: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan Model: OGEY10 Operational frequency band: 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz) 4) WCDMA Band3 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 5) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 6) LTE Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz) 7) LTE Band3 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 8) LTE Band7 (Tx: 2500-2570 MHz, Rx: 2620-2690 MHz) 9) LTE Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 10) LTE Band20 (Tx: 832-862 MHz, Rx: 791-821 MHz) 11) WLAN IEEE802.11b (Tx/Rx: 2401-2473 MHz) 12) WLAN IEEE802.11g (Tx/Rx: 2402-2472 MHz) 13) WLAN IEEE802.11n (Tx/Rx: 2402-2472 MHz) 14) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) 15) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) 16) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) Maximum Output Power: 1) 2 W 2) 1 W 3-5) 0.25 W 6)-10) 0.20 W 11) 0.032 W 12),13) 0.016 W Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

European except British models

Bluetooth Unit*
https://continental-homologation.com/honda CE Hereby, Continental declares that the radio equipment type A2C192350/ A2C192351 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: Intended use: Vehicle Access System Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstraße 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany BLE frequency range: 2.402GHz to 2.48GHz BLE Maximum Output Power: +20dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

* Not available on all models

Continued

European except British models

Wireless Charger*
https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc CE Hereby, LG Electronics Inc. declares that the radio equipment type WC500HOCI21 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: Intended use: Wireless Power Charger for vehicle Operational frequency band: 75kHz~118.320kHz Maximum output power: 15W Importer name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address; Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

* Not available on all models

European except British models

Remote Tuner
http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ CE Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/,click “Declaration of Conformity”, enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC). Keyword: Model No. Keyword: [CQ-TH1BE0AJ, CQ-TH1BE1AJ, CQ-TH1AE0TT] You can see “Ref No” in unit label. Intended use: RADIO UNIT (Car radio tuner) Postal Address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan Importer name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address; Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

Continued

British models

BCM Keyless Access System	FOB Keyless Remote
http://continental-homologation.com/honda UK CA Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://continental-homologation.com/honda Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Frequency band; 125kHz +/- 3kHz Maximum transmitted output; 66dBuA/m at 10m Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom	http://continental-homologation.com/honda UK CA 'Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://continental-homologation.com/honda Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Frequency band; 433.66MHz +/- 16kHz 434.18MHz +/- 16kHz Maximum transmitted output; 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

British models

Hands-Free Telephone System Display Audio
http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ UK CA Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type [*] is in compliance with The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC). Model No. Keyword [*] CL-MH------, CA-9H------, CL-MH1BX1JT,CL-MH1AE6JT,CL-MH1AE0JT,CL-MH1AE2JT You can see “Ref No” in unit label Intended use: Car Audio System (Bluetooth and WLAN) Postal address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan Manufacturer name: Panasonic Corporation Specifications of Bluetooth Frequency band: 2402 - 2480 MHz Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN Frequency band: 2412 - 2472 MHz Specifications of Bluetooth Maximum output power: 0.1 dBm Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN Maximum output power: 11.9 dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Continued

British models

Blind spot information System/Cross Traffic Monitor
https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory UK CA Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation. https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory Intended use: 24 GHz Short Range Radar Sensor Postal address: 26545 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034 United States of America Operational frequency band: 24.05 - 24.25 GHz Maximum Output Power: 13 dBm peak Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

British models

Telematics Control Unit
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ UK CA Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ Intended use: Telematics and Wi-Fi Hotspot device for Vehicle Postal address: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan Model: OGEY10 Operational frequency band: 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz) 4) WCDMA Band3 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 5) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 6) LTE Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz) 7) LTE Band3 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 8) LTE Band7 (Tx: 2500-2570 MHz, Rx: 2620-2690 MHz) 9) LTE Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 10) LTE Band20 (Tx: 832-862 MHz, Rx: 791-821 MHz) 11) WLAN IEEE802.11b (Tx/Rx: 2401-2473 MHz) 12) WLAN IEEE802.11g (Tx/Rx: 2402-2472 MHz) 13) WLAN IEEE802.11n (Tx/Rx: 2402-2472 MHz) 14) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) 15) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) 16) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) Maximum Output Power: 1) 2 W 2) 1 W 3-5) 0.25 W 6)-10) 0.20 W 11) 0.032 W 12),13) 0.016 W Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Continued

British models

Bluetooth Unit*
https://continental-homologation.com/honda UK CA Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [A2C775684] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://continental-homologation.com/honda Intended use: Control Unit Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstraße 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany BLE frequency range: 2.402GHz to 2.48GHz BLE Maximum Output Power: +20dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

* Not available on all models

British models

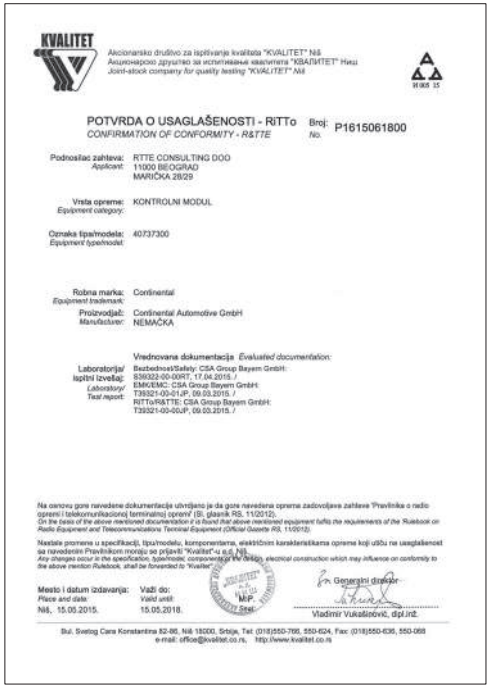
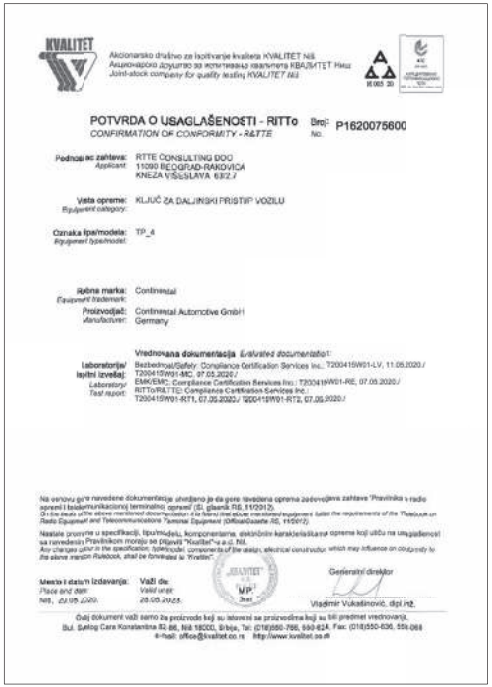
Remote Tuner
http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ UK CA Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type [*] is in compliance with The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC). Keyword: Model No. Keyword: [CQ-TH1BE0AJ, CQ-TH1BE1AJ, CQ-TH1AE0TT] You can see “Ref No” in unit label. Intended use: RADIO UNIT (Car radio tuner) Postal Address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan Importer name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Continued

British models

Wireless Charger
https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc (Input the model name : WC500HOCI21) Hereby, LG Electronics declares that the radio equipment type wireless charger is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address : http://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc Intended use: Wireless Power Charger for vehicle Postal Address: 128, Yeoui-daero, Yeongdeungpo-gu, Seoul, Korea Operational frequency band: 111kHz/max power : 42dBuA/m @10m Maximum Output Power: 111kHz/max power : 42dBuA/m @10m Importer name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Serbian models

BCM Keyless Access System	FOB Keyless Access System
	

KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" Niš
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш
Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" Niš

H 005 15

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RiTTo Broj: P1615061800
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE *No.*

Podnosilac zahteva: *Applicant:* RTTE CONSULTING DOO
11000 BEOGRAD
MARIČKA 28/29

Vrsta opreme: *Equipment category:* KONTROLNI MODUL

Oznaka tipa/modela: *Equipment type/model:* 40737300

Robna marka: *Equipment trademark:* Continental

Proizvođač: *Manufacturer:* Continental Automotive GmbH
NEMAČKA

Vrednovana dokumentacija *Evaluated documentation:*

Laboratorija/ispitni izveštaj: *Laboratory/Test report:*
Bezbednost/Safety: CSA Group Bayern GmbH:
S39322-00-00RT, 17.04.2015. /
EMK/EMC: CSA Group Bayern GmbH:
T39321-00-01JP, 09.03.2015. /
RITTo/R&TTE: CSA Group Bayern GmbH:
T39321-00-00JP, 09.03.2015. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve "Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the "Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components or the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: *Place and date:* Niš, 15.05.2015.
Važi do: *Valid until:* 15.05.2018.
MP. *Seal*
Generalni direktor
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija, Tel. (018)550-768, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KVALITET Niš
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета КВАЛИТЕТ Ниш
Joint-stock company for quality testing KVALITET Niš

H 005 20

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RiTTo Broj: P1620075600
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE *No.*

Podnosilac zahteva: *Applicant:* RTTE CONSULTING DOO
11000 BEOGRAD-RAKOVICA
KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 68/2 /

Vrsta opreme: *Equipment category:* KLJUČ ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZILU

Oznaka tipa/modela: *Equipment type/model:* TP_4

Robna marka: *Equipment trademark:* Continental

Proizvođač: *Manufacturer:* Continental Automotive GmbH
Germany

Vrednovana dokumentacija *Evaluated documentation:*

Laboratorija/ispitni izveštaj: *Laboratory/Test report:*
Bezbednost/Safety: Compliance Certification Services Inc.: T200415W01-LV, 11.05.2020. /
T200415W01-MC, 07.05.2020. /
EMK/EMC: Compliance Certification Services Inc.: T200415W01-RE, 07.05.2020. /
RITTo/R&TTE: Compliance Certification Services Inc.:
T200415W01-RT1, 07.05.2020. / T200415W01-RT2, 07.05.2020. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve "Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the "Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components or the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

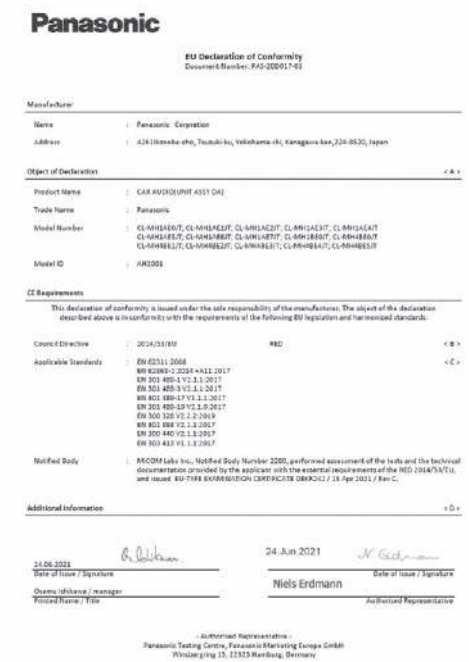
Mesto i datum izdavanja: *Place and date:* Niš, 07.05.2020.
Važi do: *Valid until:* 28.05.2023.
MP. *Seal*
Generalni direktor
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su istovetni sa proizvodima koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija, Tel: (018)550-768, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

Continued

Serbian models

Hands-Free Telephone System



Panasonic

EU Declaration of Conformity
Document Number: PAS-200917-03

Manufacturer

Name	:	Panasonic Corporation
Address	:	4261 Ikenaka-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken,224-8520, Japan

Object of Declaration < A >

Product Name	:	CAR AUDIO(UNIT ASSY DA)
Trade Name	:	Panasonic
Model Number	:	CL-MH1AE0/T, CL-MH1AE1/T, CL-MH1AE2/T, CL-MH1AE3/T, CL-MH1AE4/T CL-MH1AE5/T, CL-MH1AR6/T, CL-MH1AR7/T, CL-MH1BE0/T, CL-MH4BE0/T CL-MH4BE1/T, CL-MH4BE2/T, CL-MH4BE3/T, CL-MH4BE4/T, CL-MH4BE5/T
Model ID	:	AM2001

CE Requirements

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer. The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the requirements of the following EU legislation and harmonized standards:

Council Directive	:	2014/53/EU	RED < B >
Applicable Standards	:	EN 62311:2008 EN 62368-1:2014+A11:2017 EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1:2017 EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1:2017 EN 301 489-17 V3.1.1:2017 EN 301 489-19 V2.1.0:2017 EN 300 328 V2.2.2:2019 EN 301 893 V2.1.3:2017 EN 300 440 V2.1.1:2017 EN 303 413 V1.1.1:2017	< C >
Notified Body	:	MICOM Labs Inc., Notified Body Number 2200, performed assessment of the tests and the technical documentation provided by the applicant with the essential requirements of the RED 2014/53/EU, and issued EU-TYPE EXAMINATION CERTIFICATE DMKR2012 / 15 Apr 2021 / Rev C.	

Additional Information < D >

24.06.2021
Date of Issue / Signature

Osoba ishlavne / manager
Printed Name / Title

24 Jun 2021
Date of Issue / Signature

Niels Erdmann
Authorized Representative

- Authorized Representative -
Panasonic Testing Centre, Panasonic Marketing Europe GmbH
Winsbergring 15, 22525 Hamburg, Germany

Blind spot information System*/Cross Traffic Monitor*

Idvorski laboratorije d.o.o. Beograd
Vojvode 15, 11000 Beograd
tel: +381 11 6778 209
www.idvorski.com
office@idvorski.com
Certifikacione tela

H 038 20

Idvorski laboratorije

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI broj 00334 00787

DATUM IZDAVANJA: 05.08.2020. VAŽI DO: 05.08.2023.

PODNOSILAC ZAHTEVA: RTTE Consulting doo
Kneza Miloševa 63/2.7, 11000 Beograd

NAZIV / VRSTA OPREME: Radar za vozilo u RF opsegu 24 GHz (24 GHz SRS Radar Sensor)

ROBNA MARKA: Veoneer

PROIZVOĐAČ: Veoneer US, Inc.
20300 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan, 48034
United States of America

TIP / MODEL: NB24G175V3

Pregledom dole navedene tehničke dokumentacije dostavljene od strane podnosioca zahteva, utvrđena je **usaglašenost opreme sa bitnim zahtevima Pravilnika o radio opremi i terminalnoj telekomunikacionoj opremi** (Službeni glasnik RS br.11/2012):

Vrsta dokumenta	Izdat od:	Oznaka:	Datum:
Health Assessment report	IDL-Lab GmbH	20023855-13643-1	29.06.2020.
Safety test report	IDL-Lab GmbH	19083330-12742-3	14.06.2020.
EMC test report	CETECOM GmbH	19-1-0207401T01a	22.06.2020.
RF test report	CETECOM GmbH	19-1-0207401T02a	24.06.2020.
EU-Type Examination Certificate	KL-Certification GbmH	T.2020.06.0016	29.06.2020.

Mesto izdavanja:
Beograd

M.P.

Direktor
Saša Jorgovanović, dipl.el.inž.

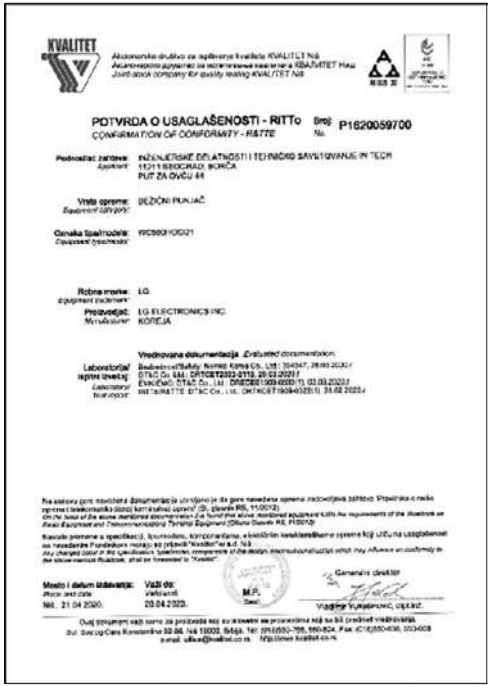
* Not available on all models

Serbian models

Telematics Control Unit
Овиме, DENSO CORPORATION изјављује да је радио опрема тип усаглашена са Директивом 2014/53/EU. Цео текст ЕУ декларације о усаглашености доступам је на следећој интернет адреси: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/

Serbian models

Wireless Charger*



KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KVALITET Niš
Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KBA/MTET Niš
Joint-stock company for quality testing KVALITET Niš

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTo
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE

Broj: P1620059700
No.

Podnosilac zahteva: INŽENJERSKE DELATNOSTI I TEHNIČKO SAVETOVANJE IN TECH
Applicant: 11211 BEOGRAD-BORČA
PUT ZA OVČU 44

Vrsta opreme: BEŽIČNI PUNJAČ
Equipment category:

Oznaka tipa/modela: WC5021OD21
Equipment type/model:

Robna marka: LG
Equipment trademark:

Proizvođač: LG ELECTRONICS INC.
Manufacturer: KOREJA

Vrednovana dokumentacija Evaluated documentation:

Laboratorija/ispitni izveštaj: Bezbednost/Safety: Nemko Korea Co., Ltd.: 304847, 26.03.2020./
DTAC Co. Ltd.: DRTC6872002-0110, 20.02.2020./
EMC/EMC: DTAC Co., Ltd.: DRTC6871909-0201(1), 03.03.2020./
Laboratory/Test report: RITTo/R&TTE: DTAC Co., Ltd.: DRTC6871909-0201(1), 28.02.2020./

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve 'Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi' (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the 'Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012)'.

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim konstruktivnim crtežima opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mentioned Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Generalni direktor

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Place and date: Niš, 21.04.2020.
Važi do: Valid until: 20.04.2023.
M.P. Seal
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su ispitani sa proizvodima koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 52-56, Niš 18000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

Bluetooth Unit

KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KVALITET Niš
Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KBA/MTET Niš
Joint-stock company for quality testing KVALITET Niš

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTo
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE

Broj: P1620138300
No.

Podnosilac zahteva: RTTE CONSULTING DOO
Applicant: 11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVICA
KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 63/2,7

Vrsta opreme: SISTEM ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZILU
Equipment category:

Oznaka tipa/modela: A2C77684
Equipment type/model:

Robna marka: Continental
Equipment trademark:

Proizvođač: Continental Automotive GmbH
Manufacturer: Germany

Vrednovana dokumentacija Evaluated documentation:

Laboratorija/ispitni izveštaj: Bezbednost/Safety: TUV SUD Product Service GmbH.: TR-04689-73487-01 (Edition 02) 23.04.2020./
EMC/EMC: EMV TESTHAUS GmbH.: 190050-AU02+E01, 06.11.2019./
Laboratory/Test report: RITTo/R&TTE: EMV TESTHAUS GmbH.: 190050-AU02+W01, 30.10.2019./

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve 'Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi' (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the 'Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012)'.

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim konstruktivnim crtežima opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mentioned Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Generalni direktor

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Place and date: Niš, 09.09.2020.
Važi do: Valid until: 08.09.2023.
M.P. Seal
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

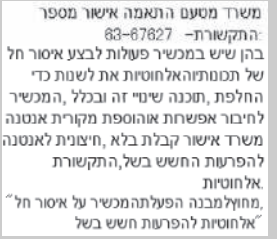
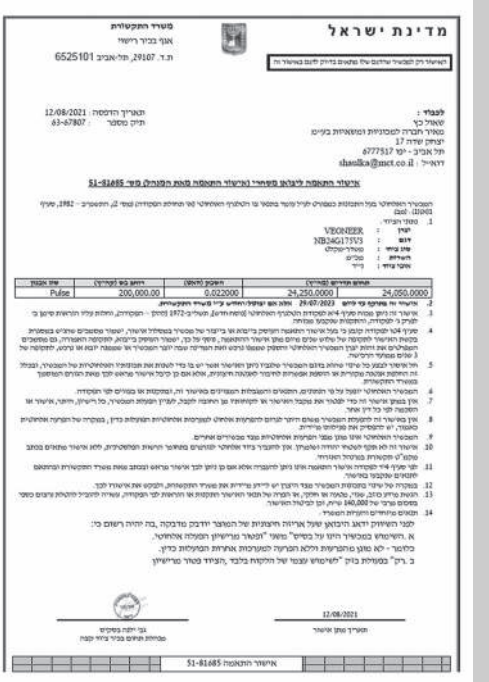
Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su ispitani sa proizvodima koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 52-56, Niš 18000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

* Not available on all models

Israeli models

BCM Keyless Access System	FOB Keyless Access System
Certification NO. "מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-74423" חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משר ד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות	Certification NO. "מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-74074" חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משר ד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

Israeli models

Hands-Free Telephone System	Blind spot information System/Cross Traffic Monitor
	

משרד מסעם התאמה אישור מספר
:התקשורת- 63-67627
בהן שיש במכשיר פעולות לבצע איסור חל
של תכונתיהאלחוטיות את לשנות כדי
החלפת ,תוכנה שינוי זה ובכלל ,המכשיר
לחיבור אפשרות אוהוספת מקורית אנטנה
משרד אישור קבלת בלא ,חיצונית לאנטנה
להפרעות החשש בשל,התקשורת
.אלחוטיות
,מחוץלמבנה הפעלתהמכשיר על איסור חל״
״אלחוטיות להפרעות חשש בשל

Israeli models

Wireless Charger

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 55-13657
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Turkish models

BCM Keyless Access System
Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 125KHz Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Importer Name: HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

Continental

Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12 | 93055 Regensburg | Germany

Lavinia-Carolina Grecu
VNI CE HW EU2 TSR COE HOM
Phone: +40374-35-5124
Fax: + 40 256 25-3001
Carolina.Grecu@continental-corporation.com

EU Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU

Date 16.07.2020 | Your message dated | Our reference | Your reference

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany

Product type designation: 415BD430

Intended use: Integrated Body Controller

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU, when used for its intended purpose.

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 62368-1:2014 + A11:2017 EN 62479:2010 EN 50663:2017
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):	*Applied standard:* EN 301 489-1 V2.2.3(2019-11) Final draft EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (2017-03)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1 V3.1.1 EN 300 220 -2 V3.1.1 EN 300 330 V2.1.1 (2017)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 16.07.2020

Klaus Binder
Vice President Finance and Controlling
Vehicle Networking and Information

Norbert Müller
Senior Vice President Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI) Central Engineering (CE)

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 05 03, 93009 Regensburg | Germany
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court Local Court Hanover
HRB 201 | VAT-Reg.-No. DE 114 150 622
Executive Board: Georg Schaeffler, Harald Sommer
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC / SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 3007 0010 0096 0100 00

Turkish models

FOB Keyless Access System
CE Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

Continental

Vehicle Networking and Information

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12 | 93055 Regensburg | Germany

Mozar Petre Bogdan
VNI CE HW SU2 TSR COE HOM
Phone: + 40 374- 35-5511
Fax: + 40 374- 35-3061
petre-bogdan.mozar@continental-corporation.com

Date
15.05.2020

Your message dated | Our reference | Your reference

EU Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany

Product type designation: TP_4

Intended use: Radio Frequency Transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 62368-1:2014+A11:2017 EN 62479:2010 EN 50663:2017
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):	*Applied standard(s):* DRAFT EN 301 489-1 V2.2.1(2019-03)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V3.1.1 EN 300 220 -2: V3.1.1 EN 300 330 -V2.1.1 2017-02

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 15.05.2020

Klaus Binder
Vice President Finance and Controlling
Central Engineering (CE)
Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

Norbert Müller
Senior Vice President
Central Engineering (CE)
Vehicle Networking and Information(VNI)

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43, 93059 Regensburg | Germany
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Local Court Hanover
HRB 59418 | VAT ID No.: DE 815600083
Executive Board: Georg Sebastian, Hayati Bahkaraz
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC / SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0556 5103 00

Continued

Turkish models

Hands-Free Telephone System Display Audio
http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ CE Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/,click “ “Declaration of Conformity” “, enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest “ “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” “ (DoC).Keyword:: Model No.Keyword [*] CL-MH------, CA-9H------,CL-MH1CE0TT,CL-MH1AXYTT,CL-MH1BX1JT,CL-MH1AE6JT,CL-MH1AE0JT,CL-MH1AE2JT,CL-MH1BE0JT,CL-MH1AE8JT,CL-MH1AE9JT,CL-MH1AE3JT,CL-MH1AE7JT,CL-MH1AE5JT,CL-MH1AEAJT You can see “Ref No” in unit label. Intended use: Car Audio System (Bluetooth and WLAN) Postal address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan Manufacturer name: Panasonic Corporation Specifications of Bluetooth Frequency band: 2402 - 2480 MHz Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN Frequency band: 2412 - 2472 MHz Specifications of Bluetooth Maximum output power: 0.1 dBm Specifications of 2.4GHz WLAN Maximum output power: 11.9 dBm Importer Name: HONDA MOTOR EUROPE LTD. HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

* Not available on all models

Turkish models

Blind spot information System*/Cross Traffic Monitor*
https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory CE Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation. https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory Intended use: 24 GHz Short Range Radar Sensor Postal address: 26545 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034 United States of America Operational frequency band: 24.05 - 24.25 GHz Maximum Output Power: 13 dBm peak Importer Name: HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

* Not available on all models

Continued

Turkish models

Emergency Call (eCall)
https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ CE Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ İşbu belge; DENSO CORPORATION telsiz ekipmanı tipinin 2014/53/AB sayılı Direktif'e uygun olduğunu beyan eder. AB uygunluk beyanının tam metni aşağıdaki internet adresinde mevcuttur: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ Intended use: ECALL device for Vehicle Postal address: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan Model: OGEY23 Operation frequency: 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz) 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz) 4) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz) 5) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) 6) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) 7) GLONASS(RX: 1601.709 MHz) 8) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz) Maximum Output Power: 1) 2 W 2) 1 W 3,4) 0.25 W Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

Turkish models

Bluetooth Unit*
https://continental-homologation.com/honda CE Hereby, Continental declares that the radio equipment type A2C192350/ A2C192351 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: Intended use: Vehicle Access System Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstraße 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany BLE frequency range: 2.402GHz to 2.48GHz BLE Maximum Output Power: +20dBm Importer Name: HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

* Not available on all models

Continued

Turkish models

Wireless Charger*
https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc CE Hereby, LG Electronics Inc. declares that the radio equipment type WC500HOCI21 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: Intended use: Wireless Power Charger for vehicle Operational frequency band: 75kHz~118.320kHz Maximum output power: 15W Importer name: HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address; Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

* Not available on all models

Turkish models

Remote Tuner
http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ CE Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/,click “Declaration of Conformity”, enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC). Keyword: Model No. Keyword: [CQ-TH1BE0AJ, CQ-TH1BE1AJ, CQ-TH1AE0TT] You can see “Ref No” in unit label. Intended use: RADIO UNIT (Car radio tuner) Postal Address: 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan Importer name: HONDA TÜRKİYE A.Ş. Postal address: Sanayi Cad. No:1, Aydınevler 34854 Maltepe/ İstanbul

Declaration of Conformity Content Outline*

EC
UKCA **Declaration of Conformity** CE UK CA

1. The undersigned, Mr. Kensuke Hiraki, representing the manufacturers, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfils all the relevant provisions of:
   - The EC-directive 2006/42/EC on machinery
   - Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008
2. Description of the machinery
   a) Generic denomination: Pantograph jack
   b) Function: lifting motor vehicle

c) Model	d) Type
SNB	Honda Type-A
SJD	Honda Type-B
S2A	Honda Type-C
SAH	Honda Type-D
TP6	Honda Type-G
T5A	Honda Type- I
T2V	Honda Type-J
TNY	Honda Type-K
S9A	Honda Type-L

3. Manufacturer (1) : Honda Type-A/B/C/G/I/K/L
   RIKENKAKI CO., LTD.
   5-6-12 Chiyoda Sakado-shi,
   Saitama 350-0214
   JAPAN
4. Manufacturer (2) : Honda Type-D/J
   CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO., LTD.
   No. 5 Xinlin Road, Zhonglou Changzhou,
   Jiangsu CHINA
5. Legal person authorised to compile the technical file (1) :
   Honda Motor Europe Ltd Belgian Branch
   p/a Honda Motor Europe Ltd – Aalst Office
   Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V)
   B-9300 Aalst (Belgium)

   Legal person authorised to compile the technical file (2) :
   Honda Motor Europe Ltd
   Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

6. References to harmonized standards	7. Other standards or specifications
EN1494:2000+A1:2008	-

8. Done at: Saitama, Japan
9. Date: 1 Sep,2021

Kensuke Hiraki

Kensuke Hiraki
President of RIKENKAKI CO.,LTD.
President of CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO.,LTD.

Note:This declaration becomes invalid, if technical or operational modifications are introduced without the manufacturers consent.

Deutsch (German)
EG-Konformitätserklärung
1. Der Unterzeichner, Herr Ryoichi Hiraki, Vertreter der Hersteller, erklärt hiermit, das die unten beschriebenen Maschinen den relevanten Bestimmungen von folgender Richtlinie entsprechen:
•EG-Richtlinie 2006/42/EC für Maschinen
2. Beschreibung der Maschine
a) Allgemeine Bezeichnung :
Scherenwagenheber
b) Funktion : Anhebung des Kraftfahrzeugs
c) Modell d) Typ
3. Hersteller (1)
4. Hersteller (2)
5. Juristische Person, die bevollmächtig ist, die technische Datei zu erstellen
6. Bezug auf Standardübereinstimmungen
7. Andere Standards oder Spezifikationen
8. Ausgestellt in 9. Datum

Français (French)
Déclaration de conformité CE
1. Le soussigné, M. Ryoichi Hiraki, représentant les fabricants, déclare par la présente que les machines décrites ci-dessous satisfont toutes les dispositions pertinentes de:
•La Directive CE 2006/42/EC concernant les machines
2. Description des machines
a) Dénomination générique :
Cric pantographe
b) Fonction : levage de véhicule à moteur
c) Modèle d) Type
3. Fabricant (1)
4. Fabricant (2)
5. Personne morale habilitée à compiler le fichier technique
6. Références aux normes harmonisées
7. Autres normes ou spécifications
8. Fait à 9. Date

Nederland (Dutch)
EG-conformiteitsverklaring
1. De ondergetekende, dhr. Ryoichi Hiraki, die de fabrikanten vertegenwoordigt, verklaart hierbij dat de hieronder beschreven machine voldoet aan alle relevante voorzieningen van:
•De EG-richtlijn 2006/42/EG voor machines
2. Beschrijving van de machine
a) Generieke benaming : Pantograafkrik
b) Functie : Motorvoertuig opheffen
c) Model d) Type
3. Fabrikant (1)
4. Fabrikant (2)
5. Rechtspersoon geautoriseerd voor de samenstelling van het technische dossier
6. Referentie geharmoniseerde normen
7. Andere normen of specificaties
8. Plaats 9. Datum

Dansk (Danish)
EF-overensstemmelseserklæring
1. Undertegnede, hr. Ryoichi Hiraki, som repræsenterer producenterne, erklærer hermed, at de herunder beskrevne maskiner overholder alle de relevante bestemmelser i:
•Maskindirektivet, EU-direktiv 2006/42/EF
2. Beskrivelse af maskinerne
a) Generisk betegnelse : Saksedonkraft
b) Funktion : Til at løfte motorkøretøj
c) Model d) Type
3. Producent (1)
4. Producent (2)
5. Juridisk person med bemyndigelse til at udarbejde den tekniske fil
6. Henvisninger til harmoniserede standarder
7. Andre standarder eller specifikationer
8. Sted 9. Dato

* Not available on all models

Italiano (Italian)
Dichiarazione CE di Conformità
1. Il sottoscritto, Sig. Ryoichi Hiraki, rappresentante delle fabbriche, dichiara che il veicolo sotto riportato è conforme alle disposizioni pertinenti alla:
•Direttiva 2006/42/CE relative agli autoveicoli
2. Descrizione della vettura
a) Denominazione generica :
Martinetto a pantografo
b) Funzione :
sollevamento veicolo a motore
c) Modello d) Tipo
3. Fabbrica (1)
4. Fabbrica (2)
5. Legale autorizzato a costituire il fascicolo tecnico
6. Riferimento norme standard
7. Altre norme e specifiche
8. Eseguito a 9. Data

Ελληνικά (Greek)
Δήλωση Συμμόρφωσης ΕΚ
1. Ο υπογεγραμμένος, κ. Ryoichi Hiraki, ως εκπρόσωπος των κατασκευαστών, δηλώνει δια του παρόντος ότι το μηχάνημα που περιγράφεται παρακάτω πληροί όλες τις σχετικές διατάξεις της:
•Κοινοτικής Οδηγίας 2006/42/ΕΚ σχετικά με μηχανήματα
2. Περιγραφή του μηχανήματος
α) Συνήθης ονομασία : Γρύλος αυτοκινήτου
β) Λειτουργία : Ανύψωση μηχανοκίνητων οχημάτων
γ) Μοντέλο δ) Τύπος
3. Κατασκευαστής (1)
4. Κατασκευαστής (2)
5. Νομικό πρόσωπο εξουσιοδοτημένο για τη σύνταξη του τεχνικού φακέλου
6. Αναφορές στα εναρμονισμένα πρότυπα
7. Άλλα πρότυπα ή προδιαγραφές
8. Συντάχθηκε στη 9. Ημερομηνία

Português (Portuguese)
Declaração de Conformidade CE
1. O abaixo-assinado, Ryoichi Hiraki, representando os fabricantes através desta, declara que a maquinaria descrita abaixo cumpre todas as disposições referentes à:
•Directiva 2006/42/CE, sobre máquinas.
2. Descrição da maquinaria
a) Denominação genérica :
Macaco de tesoura
b) Função : Elevação de veículo motor
c) Modelo d) Tipo
3. Fabricante (1)
4. Fabricante (2)
5. Pessoa jurídica autorizada a compilar o processo técnico
6. Referências às normas harmonizadas
7. Outras normas ou especificações
8. Elaborado em 9. Data

Svenska (Swedish)
EG-försäkran om överensstämmelse
1. Undertecknad representant för tillverkaren, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, försäkrar härmed att den nedan beskrivna maskinutrustningen uppfyller alla tillämpliga bestämmelser i:
•EU:s maskindirektiv 2006/42/EG
2. Beskrivning av maskinutrustningen
a) Generisk benämning : Saxdomkraft
b) Funktion : Lyft av motorfordon
c) Modell d) Typ
3. Tillverkare (1)
4. Tillverkare (2)
5. Juridisk person behörig att sammanställa den tekniska dokumentationen
6. Hänvisningar till harmoniserade normer
7. Övriga normer eller specifikationer
8. Utfärdad i 9. Datum

Suomi / Suomen kieli (Finnish)
EY Vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus
1. Allekirjoittanut, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, valmistajan edustaja, vakuuttaa täten, että alla kuvattu laite täyttää kaikki seuraavissa säännöksissä annetut asianmukaiset velvoitteet:
•Koneita koskeva EY-direktiivi 2006/42/EC
2. Laitteen kuvaus
a) Yleisnimike : Saksinosturi
b) Käyttötarkoitus :
moottoriajoneuvon nostaminen
c) Malli d) Tyyppi
3. Valmistaja (1)
4. Valmistaja (2)
5. Teknisen tiedoston kokoamiseen valtuutettu oikeushenkilö
6. Yhdenmukaistettujen standardien viitetiedot
7. Muut standardit tai tiedot
8. Paikka 9. Päiväys

Čeština (Czech)
ES - Prohlášení o shodě
1. Níže podepsaný Ryoichi Hiraki jako zástupce výrobce, tímto prohlašuje, že uvedené strojní zařízení splňuje příslušné požadavky Směrnice evropské komise 2006/42/EC pro strojní zařízení.
2. Popis strojního zařízení
a) Obecný název : nůžkový zvedák
b) Funkce : zvedání motorových vozidel
c) Model d) Typ
3. Výrobce (1)
4. Výrobce (2)
5. Právnická osoba oprávněná k předložení technické dokumetace
6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy
7. Jiné normy nebo specifikace
8. Místo 9. Datum

Polski (Polish)
Deklaracja zgodności WE
1. Niżej podpisany, Pan Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentujący producentów, niniejszym oświadcza, że opisane poniżej urządzenie jest zgodne z wszystkimi stosownymi postanowieniami:
•Dyrektywy maszynowej Wspólnoty Europejskiej 2006/42/WE
2. Opis urządzenia
a) Nazwa ogólna : podnośnik nożycowy
b) Przeznaczenie : podnoszenie pojazdów silnikowych
c) Model d) Typ
3. Producent (1)
4. Producent (2)
5. Osoba prawna upoważniona do kompilacji dokumentacji technicznej
6. Odniesienie do zharmonizowanych norm
7. Inne normy lub specyfikacje
8. Sporządzono w 9. Data

Slovenčina (Slovak)
ES vyhlásenie o zhode
1. Podpísaný Ryoichi Hiraki, zástupca výrobcov, týmto vyhlasuje, že nižšie opísané strojové zariadenie spĺňa všetky príslušné ustanovenia tejto smernice:
•Smernica 2006/42/ES o strojových zariadeniach
2. Opis strojového zariadenia
a) Generické určenie : pantografický zdvihák
b) Funkcia : zdvíhanie motorových vozidiel
c) Model d) Typ
3. Výrobca (1)
4. Výrobca (2)
5. Autorizovaný zástupca schopný predložiť technickú dokumentáciu
6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy
7. Iné normy alebo požiadavky
8. Miesto 9. Dátum

Continued

Magyar (Hungarian)
EK megfelelőségi nyilatkozat
1. Alulírott, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, a gyártók képviseletében ezennel kijelenti, hogy az alább megnevezett gép teljesíti:
•a gépekre vonatkozó 2006/42/EK irányelv összes vonatkozó előírását.
2. A gép leírása
a) Általános megnevezés : ollós emelő
b) Rendeltetés : gépkocsiemelő
c) Modell d) Típus
3. Gyártó (1)
4. Gyártó (2)
5. A műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására meghatalmazott jogi személy
6. Harmonizált szabványhivatkozások
7. Egyéb szabványok vagy műszaki jellemzők
8. Kiállítás helye 9. Kiállítás dátuma

Eesti (Estonian)
EÜ vastavusdeklaratsioon
1. Tootjate esindaja hr. Ryoichi Hiraki kinnitab käesolevaga, et allpool kirjeldatud seadmed vastavad järgmise õigusakti kõigile asjakohastele sätetele:
•EÜ masinadirektiiv 2006/42/EÜ
2. Seadmete kirjeldus
a) Üldnimetus : käärtungraud
b) Funktsioon : mootorsõiduki tõstmine
c) Mudel d) Tüüp
3. Tootja (1)
4. Tootja (2)
5. Juriidiline isik, kes on volitatud koostama tehnilist toimikut
6. Viited harmoneeritud standarditele
7. Muud standardid ja spetsifikatsioonid
8. Koht 9. Kuupäev

Latviešu (Latvian)
EK paziņojums par atbilstību
1. Zemāk parakstījies Ryoichi Hiraki, kas pārstāv ražotājus, ar šo paziņo, ka zemāk aprakstītā mašīna atbilst piemērojamām šīs direktīvas prasībām:
•EK Mašīnu direktīva 2006/42/EK
2. Mašīnas apraksts
a) Vispārīgs apzīmējums : Vītnes domkrats
b) Funkcija : Spēkratu celšana
c) Modelis d) Tips
3. Ražotājs (1)
4. Ražotājs (2)
5. Juridiskā persona, kas pilnvarota apkopot tehnisko failu
6. Atsauces uz harmonizētajiem standartiem
7. Citi standarti vai specifikācijas
8. Vieta 9. Laiks

Slovenščina (Slovenian)
Izjava o skladnosti ES
1. Podpisani g. Ryoichi Hiraki, ki zastopa proizvajalce, s tem izjavlja, da naprava, ki je opisana spodaj, izpolnjuje vse relevantne določbe:
•Direktive o napravah 2006/42/ES
2. Opis naprave
a) Generično ime : Pantografski dvigalnik
b) Funkcija : dvigovanje motornega vozila
c) Model d) Tip
3. Proizvajalec (1)
4. Proizvajalec (2)
5. Pravna oseba, ki je upravičena do sestave tehničnega dokumenta
6. Reference glede harmoniziranih standardov
7.Drugi standardi ali specifikacije
8. Ustvarjeno v/na 9. Datum

Български (Bulgarian)
ЕС декларация за съответствие
1. Долуподписаният г-н Риоки Хираки, представляващ производителите, декларирам с настоящата, че машината описана по-долу напълно изпълнява всички съответни разпоредби на:
•Европейската директивата 2006/42/ЕС за машиностроенето
2. Описание на машината
а) Генерично наименование : Пантографен крик
b) Функция : повдигане на моторни превозни средства
c) Модел d) Тип
3. Производител (1)
4. Производител (2)
5. Юридическо лице упълномощено да състави техническия файл
6. Препратки към хармонизирани стандарти
7. Други стандарти или спецификации
8. Изготвено в 9. Дата

Român (Romanian)
Declarație de conformitate CE
1. Subsemnatul Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentant al producătorilor, declar prin prezenta că utilajul descris mai jos respectă toate prevederile relevante ale:
•Directivei CE 2006/42/CE referitoare la mașini
2. Descrierea utilajului
a) Denumire generică : Cric tip pantograf
b) Funcție : ridicarea vehiculelor cu motor
c) Model d) Tip
3. Producător (1)
4. Producător (2)
5. Persoana juridică autorizată să redacteze fișierul tehnic
6. Trimiteri la standardele armonizate
7. Alte standarde sau specificații
8. Întocmită în 9. Data

Türk (Turkish)
AT Uygunluk Beyanı
1. Aşağıda imzası bulunan Sn. Ryoichi Hiraki, İmalâtçıları temsilen, tarif edilen makinelerin aşağıda adı geçen yönetmeliğin ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder:
•AT makine direktifi 2006/42/EC
2. Makinelerin tanımı
a) Jenerik adı : Pantograf krikо
b) İşlevi : motorlu taşıtları kaldırma
c) Model d) Tür
3. İmalâtçı (1)
4. İmalâtçı (2)
5. Teknik dosyayı düzenlemeye yetkili tüzel kişi
6. Uyumlaştırılmış standartlara atıflar
7. Diğer standartlar ya da şartnameler
8. Düzenlendiği yer 9. Tarih

Íslenska (Icelandic)
EB-samræmisyfirlýsing
1. Undirritaður, herra Ryoichi Hiraki, fulltrúi framleiðanda, lýsir yfir að vélbúnaðinum, sem lýst er hér að neðan, uppfyllir öll viðeigandi ákvæði:
•EB-tilskipunarinnar 2006/42/EC um vélbúnað
2. Lýsing á vélbúnaðinum
a) Almennt heiti : Tvíarma tjakkur
b) Hlutverk : að lyfta vélknúnum ökutækjum
c) Gerð d) Tegund
3. Framleiðandi (1)
4. Framleiðandi (2)
5. Lögaðili sem hefur heimild að taka saman tækniskjal
6. Tilvísanir í samhæfða staðla
7. Aðrir staðlar eða tæknilýsingar
8. Staður 9. Dagsetning

Español (Spanish) Declaración de Conformidad CE 1. El abajo firmante, Sr. Ryoichi Hiraki, en representación de los fabricantes, por la presente declara que la maquinaria descrita a continuación cumple con las disposiciones aplicables de: •La directiva 2006/42/CE relativa a maquinarias 2. Descripción de la maquinaria a) Denominación genérica : Gato pantográfico b) Función : Elevación de vehículo automotor c) Modelo d) Tipo 3. Fabricante (1) 4. Fabricante (2) 5. Persona jurídica autorizada para recopilar el archivo técnico 6. Referencias de normas armonizadas 7. Otras normas o especificaciones 8. Elaborada en 9. Fecha	**Norsk (Norwegian)** EF-samsvarserklæring 1. Undertegnede, Ryoichi Hiraki, som representerer produsentene, erklærer herved at maskinen beskrevet nedenfor oppfyller alle relevante bestemmelser i: •EU-maskindirektiv 2006/42/EU 2. Beskrivelse av maskineriet a) Generisk betegnelse : Pantografjekk (biljekk) b) Funksjon : løfting av motorkjøretøyer c) Modell d) Type 3. Produsent (1) 4. Produsent (2) 5. Juridisk person med fullmakt til å utarbeide den tekniske dokumentasjonen 6. Henvisninger til harmoniserte standarder 7. Andre standarder eller spesifikasjoner 8. Utarbeidet i 9. Dato
Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian) EB atitikties deklaracija 1. Toliau pasirašęs gamintojų atstovas Ryoichi Hiraki deklaruoja, kad toliau aprašytoji įranga atitinka visas atitinkamas nuostatas, išdėstytas: •EB Direktyvoje 2006/42/EB dėl mašinų 2. Įrangos aprašymas a) Bendras pavadinimas : pantografo kėliklis b) Funkcija : motorinės transporto priemonės kėlimas c) Modelis d) Tipas 3. Gamintojas (1) 4. Gamintojas (2) 5. Juridinis asmuo, įgaliotas sudaryti techninę bylą 6. Nuoroda į lygiaverčius standartus 7. Kiti standartai arba specifikacijos 8. Atlikta 9. Data	**Hrvatski (Croatian)** Izjava o sukladnosti EK 1. Ja, dolje potpisani Ryoichi Hiraki, predstavnik proizvođača, ovime izjavljujem da su strojevi opisani u nastavku sukladni s bitnim odredbama: •Direktive 2006/42/EZ Europskog parlamenta i vijeća o strojevima 2. Opis stroja a) Generički naziv : pantografska dizalica b) Funkcija : podizanje motornog vozila c) Model d) Tip 3. Proizvođač (1) 4. Proizvođač (2) 5. Pravna osoba ovlaštena za sastavljanje tehničke dokumentacije 6. Upućivanje na usklađene norme 7. Ostale norme ili specifikacije 8. Mjesto 9. Datum

Continued

Compressor	
British models	Continental ContiMobilityKit Compressor to pump sealant into tires 524####### UK CA **UK-DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY** **in accordance with UK Government guidance** Manufacturer / Address: Continental Reifen Deutschland GmbH, Vahrenwalder Straße 9, 30165 Hannover, GERMANY. Continental Reifen Deutschland GmbH hereby confirms under its sole responsibility that the designated product, when used as intended, is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of following relevant regulations of the United Kingdom. - Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 - Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016 - Noise Emission in the Environment by Equipment for use Outdoors Regulations 2001 Applied designated standards in particular: DIN EN ISO 12100:2011 EN 50498:2010 EN ISO 3744:2010 Development, production, quality assurance and marketing are based on the standard IATF 16949. Hannover, 13.07.2021 Jürgen Buschmann Director BF ContiKit and Accessories Hannover, 13.07.2021 Adrian Baldmann Regulatory Compliance Specialist of Non-Tire Products

Meter Open Source Licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.
https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/business_ic_meter/

TCU Open Source Licence*

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

* Not available on all models

Numbers

12-Volt Battery
Charging System Indicator 119
Maintenance (Replacing)..... 626
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 119, 679

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 554
Accessories and Modifications..... 639
Accessory Power Socket 272
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 428
Active Cornering Lights..... 232
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow..... 485
Indicator (Amber)..... 130
Indicator (White/Green) 130
Adaptive Driving Beam 237
Indicator 123
Adding
Coolant 599
Engine Oil..... 598
Washer..... 605
Additives, Engine Oil 595
Adjustable Speed Limiter 437
Indicator 129
Adjusting
Armrest 260
Front Head Restraints..... 258
Front Seats 250, 251
Headlights..... 467
Mirrors 247
Rear Seats 255
Steering Wheel..... 246
Adjusting the Sound 311
Agile Handling Assist 456
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 278
Changing the Mode 279
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows..... 280
Dust and Pollen Filter..... 632
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 279
Sensors 283
Using Automatic Climate Control 278
Air Pressure..... 699
Airbags..... 58
After a Collision 60, 83
Airbag Care..... 79
Centre Airbag 70
Event Data Recorder..... 1
Front Airbags (SRS)..... 60
Indicator..... 77, 121
Knee Airbags..... 66
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 78
Sensors 58
Side Airbag 72
Side Curtain Airbag 75
AM/FM Radio..... 318
Ambient Meter..... 152
Android Auto 341
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..... 554
Indicator 120
App Shortcut Function 301
Apple CarPlay..... 337
Armrest..... 260
Audio 161
Audio Remote Controls..... 292
Audio System 286
Adjusting the Sound 311
Android Auto..... 341
App Shortcut Function 301
Apple CarPlay 337
Audio Remote Controls..... 292
Audio System Function 289
Audio/Information Screen 300
Basic Operation..... 289
Bluetooth® Audio 333
Clock Setup 308
DAB 323
Display Setup 312
Error Messages 383
FLAC/PCM/WAVE/MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV 329
FM/AM Radio..... 318
General Information..... 384
How to Update 313
How to Update Wirelessly 316
How to Update with a USB Device 317
iPod 326
Limitations for Manual Operation..... 307
MP3/WMA/AAC 329

On-Board Owner's Manual 296
Power Flow 345
Radio Data System (RDS) 321
Reactivating 287
Security Code 287
Selecting an Audio Source 306
Start Up 288
Status Area 306
System Updates 313
System Updates Settings 314
Theft Protection 287
USB Flash Drives 329, 384
USB Ports 291
Voice Control Operation 297
Wallpaper Setup 309
Wi-Fi Connection 336
Audio System Theft Protection 287
Audio/Information Screen 300
Auto High-Beam 234
Indicator 123
Automatic Brake Hold 551
Indicator 118, 551
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function 249
Average Fuel Economy 159, 179
Average Speed 161, 181

B

Battery 14, 624
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 119, 679
High Voltage 14, 466
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 673
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 624
Maintenance (Replacing) 629
Belts (Seat) 47
Beverage Holders 265
Blind Spot Information System 460
***Bluetooth*® Audio** 333
Booster Seats (For Children) 107
Brake System 547
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 554
Automatic Brake Hold 551
Brake Assist System 555
Fluid 603
Foot Brake 550
Indicator 116, 117, 118
Parking Brake 547
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 243, 244
Bulb Replacement 607
Back-Up Lights 611
Brake Lights 608
Front Turn Signal Lights 607
Headlights 607
High-Mount Brake Light 612
Luggage Area Light 614
Position/Daytime Running Lights 607
Rear Licence Plate Light 612
Rear Turn Signal Light 608
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 607
Vanity Mirror Light 613
Bulb Specifications 698

C

Car Wash Mode 423
Carbon Monoxide Gas 109
Carrying Luggage 403, 405
Certification Label 701
Changing Bulbs 607
CHARGE/DECEL Gauge 151
Child Restraint System 83
Booster Seats 107
Child Restraint System for Infants 86
Child Restraint System for Small Children 88
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 102
Larger Children 106
Rear-facing Child Restraint System 86
Selecting a Child Restraint System 89
Using Tether 104
Child Safety 83
Childproof Door Locks 206
Cleaning the Exterior 636
Cleaning the Interior 634
Climate Control System 278
Changing the Mode 278

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ... 280
Dust and Pollen Filter ... 632
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ... 279
Sensors ... 283
Using Automatic Climate Control ... 278
Clock ... 154, 172, 194
Clock Setup ... 308
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) ... 472
Coat Hooks ... 267
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ... 472
Console Compartment ... 264
Controls ... 193
Coolant (Engine) ... 599
Adding to the Radiator ... 600
Adding to the Reserve Tank ... 599
Overheating ... 676
Creeping ... 417
Cross Traffic Monitor ... 564
Cup Holders ... 265
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist ... 154
Customize Display ... 171, 173, 190
Customized Features ... 348, 357

D

DAB ... 323
Daytime Running Lights ... 231
Dead 12-Volt Battery ... 673
Deceleration ... 120
Deceleration Paddle Selector ... 425
Declaration of Conformity Content Outline ... 732
Defaulting All the Settings ... 364
Deflation Warning System ... 457
Calibration ... 458
Indicator ... 124, 684
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ... 280
Devices that Emit Radio Waves ... 702
Dimming
Headlights ... 226
Rearview Mirror ... 248
Dipstick (Engine Oil) ... 597
Display Audio ... 288
Display Setup ... 312
Door Mirrors ... 249
Doors ... 195
Door Open Message ... 46
Keys ... 195
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ... 204
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ... 198
Drive Mode Switch ... 429
Driver Attention Monitor ... 164, 183
Driver Information Interface ... 155, 172, 175
Switching the Display ... 155, 175
Driving ... 401
Braking ... 547
Shifting Gear ... 418
Transmission ... 417
Dust and Pollen Filter ... 632

E

e:HEV ... 13
eCall Indicator ... 394
ECON Mode Indicator ... 127
Elapsed Time ... 161, 181
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System ... 682
Indicator ... 122, 682
Emergency ... 693
Emergency Call (eCall) ... 394
Automatic Emergency Call ... 394
Manual Emergency Call ... 396
Emergency Stop Signal ... 556
Engine ... 701
Coolant ... 599
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead ... 673
Oil ... 595
Switch Buzzer ... 224
Engine Coolant ... 599
Adding to the Radiator ... 600
Adding to the Reserve Tank ... 599
Overheating ... 676

Engine Oil 595
Adding 598
Checking 597
Engine oil pressure low Warning 678
If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears 678
Recommended Engine Oil 595
Engine oil pressure low Warning 678
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 682
Indicator 122
EV Indicator 119
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 109
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 636
Exterior Mirrors 249

F

Features 285
Filter
Dust and Pollen 632
Flat Tyre 644, 657
Fluids
Brake Fluid 603
Engine Coolant 599
Windscreen Washer 605
FM/AM Radio 318
Fog Lights 230
Folding Down the Rear Seats 255
Foot Brake 550
Front Airbags (SRS) 60
Front Fog Light Indicator 123
Front Head Restraints 258
Front Seat Heaters 277
Front Seats 250
Adjusting 251
Front Wide View Camera 545
Fuel 570
Average Fuel Economy 159, 179
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 573
Gauge 150
Instant Fuel Economy 159, 179
Low Fuel Indicator 120
Range 159, 179
Recommendation 570
Refueling 570
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 573
Fuel Fill Cap 33, 571
Fuel Fill Door 33, 571
Fuses 686
Inspecting and Changing 690
Locations 686, 688

G

Gauges 150
Glass (care) 638
Glove Box 263

H

Hands-Free Telephone System 365
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls 375
Automatic Transferring 376
Favourite Contacts 377
HFT Buttons 365
HFT Menus 369
HFT Status Display 367
Limitations for Manual Operation 368
Making a Call 379
Options During a Call 382
Phone Settings Screen 371
Phone Setup 372
Receiving a Call 381
Ringtone 376
Hatch 207
Light Bulb 614
Unable to Open 695
Hazard Warning Button 6
Head Restraints 258
Headlights 226
Active Cornering Lights 232
Adaptive Driving Beam 237
Aiming 607
Auto High-Beam 234
Daytime Running Lights 231
Dimming 226
High Beams 227
Operating 226
Position Lights 226

Heated Door Mirror 245
Heated Steering Wheel 276
Heaters 277
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) 365
High Beams 227
High Voltage Battery 466
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 151
Hill Start Assist System 413
Honda Sensing 468
Honda TRK 644
Hybrid Vehicle
e:HEV 13

I

Identification Numbers 701
Engine and Transmission 701
Vehicle Identification 701
Illumination Control 243, 244
Immobilizer System 210
Indicator 125
Indicators 114
12-Volt Battery Charging System 119
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (Amber) 130
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (White/Green) 130
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval 131
Adaptive Driving Beam 123
Adjustable Speed Limiter 129
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 120
Auto High-Beam 123
Automatic Brake Hold 118
Automatic Brake Hold System 118
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Amber) 132
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey) 132
Deceleration Paddle Selector 120
ECON Mode 127
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 122
EV 119
Front Fog Light 123
High Beam 122
Immobilizer System 125
INDIVIDUAL Mode 127
Intelligent Speed Limiter 129
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 131
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) 131
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green) 131
Lights On 122
Low Fuel 120
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System 124, 684
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 118
NORMAL Mode 127
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 118
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 116, 117
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off 121
Power System 118
Ready 119
Rear Fog Light 123
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber) 132
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey) 132
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF 132
Safety Support (Amber) 133
Safety Support (Green/Grey) 135
Seat Belt Reminder 120
Security System Alarm 126
Shift Position 119
SPORT Mode 127
Supplemental Restraint System 121
System Message 128
Transmission System 119, 685
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 122
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 122
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 121
VSA OFF 455
INDIVIDUAL Mode Indicator 127
Information 171
Instant Fuel Economy 159, 179
Instrument Panel 113
Brightness Control 243, 244
Intelligent Speed Limiter 444
Indicator 129
Interior Convenience Items 261

Interior Lights 261
Interior Rearview Mirror 247, 248
iPhone 384
iPod 326, 384

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 661
Jump Starting 673

K

Key 195
  Number Tag 196
  Rear Door Won't Open 206
  Remote Transmitter 201
  Types and Functions 195
Key Number Tag 196
Kickdown 417
Knee Airbags 66

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 505
  Indicator (Amber) 131
  Indicator (White/Green) 131
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto 392
Lights 226, 607
  Active Cornering Lights 232
  Adaptive Driving Beam 237
  Auto High-Beam 234
  Bulb Replacement 607
  Daytime Running Lights 231
  Fog Light 230
  Front Fog Lights 230
  Headlights 226
  High Beam Indicator 122
  High Beams 227
  Interior 261
  Light Switches 226
  Lights On Indicator 122
  Position Lights 226
Limitations for Manual Operation 307
Load Limits 405
Locking/Unlocking 195
  Childproof Door Locks 206
  From Inside 204
  From Outside 198
  Keys 195
  Using a Key 202
Low 12-Volt Battery Charge 679
Low Fuel Indicator 120
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator 124, 684
Lower Anchorages 97
Lubricant Specifications Chart 699
Luggage (Load Limit) 405
Luggage Area Cover 269
Luggage Hook 267
Lumbar Support 253

M

Maintenance 168, 187, 575
  Battery 624
  Brake Fluid 603
  Cleaning 634
  Coolant 599
  Oil 597
  Precautions 576
  Radiator 600
  Remote Transmitter 629
  Replacing Light Bulbs 607
  Safety 577
  Service Reminder System 580
  Transmission Fluid 602
  Tyres 618
  Under the Bonnet 592
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 118, 680
Maximum Permissible Weight 405
Mirrors 247
  Adjusting 247
  Door 249
  Exterior 249
  Interior Rearview Mirror 247
Modifications (and Accessories) 639
MP3/WMA/AAC 329
Multi-View Rear Camera 568

N

Navigation 162, 181
No content 170

NORMAL Mode Indicator 127
Numbers (Identification) 701

O

Odometer 152
Oil (Engine) 595
Adding 598
Checking 597
Engine oil pressure low Warning 678
Recommended Engine Oil 595
Viscosity 595
On-Board Owner's Manual 296
Open the Owner's Manual 296
Open Source Licences 387
Opening
Hatch 695
Opening/Closing
Bonnet 593
Power Windows 217
Other Interior Convenience Items 272
Outside Temperature Display 152
Overheating 676

P

Paddle Selector
Indicator 120
Panoramic Roof 220
Parking Brake 547
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 118
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 116, 117
Parking Sensor System 559
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 78
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicator 121
Passing Indicators 226
Petrol 33, 570
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 573
Gauge 150
Information 570
Instant Fuel Economy 159, 179
Low Fuel Indicator 120
Refueling 570
Phone 161
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 333
Pop-up Hood System 80
Pop-up Hood System Care 82
Position Lights 226
POWER Button 224
Power Flow 345
Power Flow Monitor 177
Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 157
POWER Gauge 151
Power System Indicator 118
Precautions While Driving 415
Rain 416
Pregnant Women 55
Puncture (Tyre) 644, 657

R

Radiator 600
Radio (FM/AM) 318
Radio Data System (RDS) 321
Range 159, 179
RDS (Radio Data System) 321
Ready Indicator 119
Rear Demister 245
Rear Fog Light Indicator 123
Rear Seat Reminder 256
Rear Seats (Folding Down) 255
Rear Wiper/Washer 242
Refuel Recommend 399
Refueling 570
Fuel Gauge 150
Low Fuel Indicator 120
Petrol 570, 698
Regulations 702
Remote Transmitter 201
Replacement
12-Volt Battery 626
Battery 629
Bulbs 607
Fuses 686, 688
Tyres 657
Wiper Blade Rubber 615
Resetting a Trip Meter 159, 179

Road Departure Mitigation 528
Indicator 132
On and Off 531

S

Safe Driving 41
Safety Check 46
Safety Labels 110
Safety Message 0
Safety Support 169, 188
Indicator (Amber) 133, 134
Indicator (Green/Grey) 135
Seat Belts 47, 168, 187
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage 54
Checking 56
Fastening 52
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 102
Pregnant Women 55
Reminder 49
Warning Indicator 49, 120
Seats 250
Adjusting 250
Front Seat Heaters 277
Front Seats 250
Rear Seat Reminder 256
Rear Seats 255
Seat Belt Reminder Indicator 120
Security System 210
Immobilizer System Indicator 125
Security System Alarm Indicator 126
Super Locking 215
Tilt Sensor 214
Ultrasonic Sensors 213
Selecting a Child Restraint System 89
Selecting an Audio Source 306
Service Reminder System 580
Setting the Clock 194
Shift Position Indicator 119
Shifting (Transmission) 418
Shoulder Anchorage 54
Side Airbags 72
Side Curtain Airbag 75
SOS Button 396
SOS Cancel Button 396
Spark Plugs 698
Specifications 698
Specified Fuel 570
Speed Alarm 163, 182
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 437
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 444
Speed/Distance Units 170, 189
Speedometer 150
SPORT Mode Indicator 127
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 60
Starting the Power System
Buzzer 224
Does Not Start 668
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 673
Status Area 306
Steering Wheel 246
Adjusting 246
Stopping 557
Storage Items 263
Sunglasses Holder 271
Super Locking 215
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 60
Indicator 121
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 8
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 224
System Message Indicator 128
System Updates 313

T

Temperature
Outside Temperature Display 152
Temperature Sensor 152, 283
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 644
Tie-down Anchorages 268
Tilt Sensor 214
Time (Setting) 194
Tools 642
Towing a Trailer 406
Equipment and Accessories 408
Load Limits 406
Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency 693
Traffic Sign Recognition System 153, 537

Transmission 417, 418
Creeping 417
Fluid 602
Indicator 119
Kickdown 417
Number 701
Shifting 418
Trip Meter 159, 179
Trip meter 161
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 644
Troubleshooting 641
Blown Fuse 686, 688
Brake Pedal Vibrates 37
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 38
Emergency Towing 693
Noise When Braking 39
Overheating 676
Power System Won't Start 668
Puncture/Flat Tyre 657
Rear Door Won't Open 37
Warning Indicators 114
Turn signals
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 122
Turning on the Power 411
Tyres 618
Air Pressure 699
Checking and Maintaining 618
Inspection 618
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 657
Rotation 621
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 644
Tyre Chains 622
Wear Indicators 619
Winter 622

U

Ultrasonic Sensors 213
Unlocking the Doors 198
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 204
USB Flash Drives 329, 384
USB Ports 291

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Numbers 701
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 454
OFF Indicator 122
Off Switch 455
System Indicator 121
Viscosity (Oil) 595, 699
Voice Control Operation 297
Audio Commands 298
General Commands 298
List Commands 299
Navigation Commands 299
Phone Commands 298
Standard Commands 299
Voice Portal Screen 298
Voice Recognition 297
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 454

W

Wallpaper 309
Warning and Information Message 136
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 678
Warning Labels 110
Warnings 191
Watts 698
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 619
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 662
Wi-Fi Connection 336
Window Washers 240
Adding/Refilling Fluid 605
Switch 240
Windows (Opening and Closing) 217
Windscreen 240
Cleaning 638
Defrosting/Defogging 280
Washer Fluid 605
Wiper Blades 615
Wipers and Washers 240
Winter Tyres 622
Tyre Chains 622
Wipers and Washers 240
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 615
Wireless Charger 273
WMA 329
Worn Tyres 618